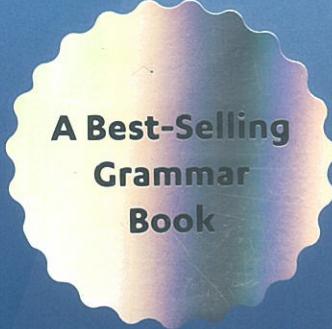


with **workbook**

# GRAMMAR **Inside**

## LEVEL 2

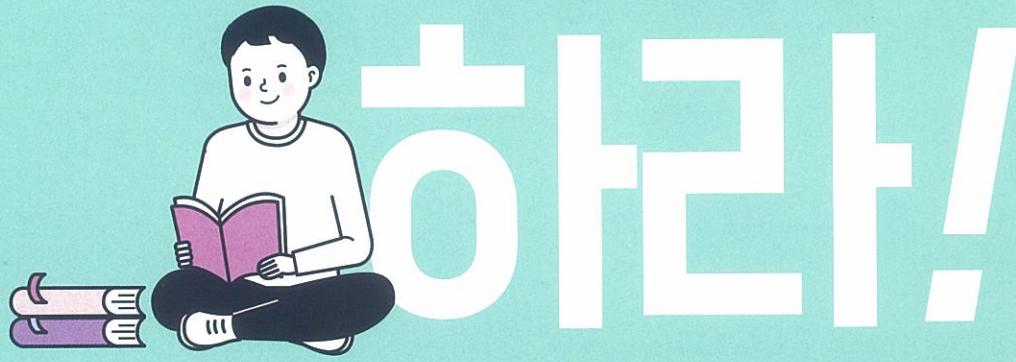
A 4-level grammar course  
with abundant writing practice



A Best-Selling  
Grammar  
Book

**NE** Neungyule

# 영어 능률



고등학생이 가장 많이 쓰는 영어교과서  
1,800만 명이 선택한 독해기본서  
1,000만 명이 사랑한 베스트 어휘서  
NE능률의 1등 노하우로 만들면 역시 다행입니다.

NE능률만의 탁월한 영어내공을 경험해보세요.  
영어를 '능률'하면 영어공부가 더 쉽고 즐거워집니다.

NE

능  
률



중등 영어교과서



고등 영어교과서



주니어 능률VOCA



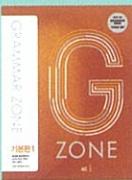
능률VOCA



주니어 리딩튜터



리딩튜터

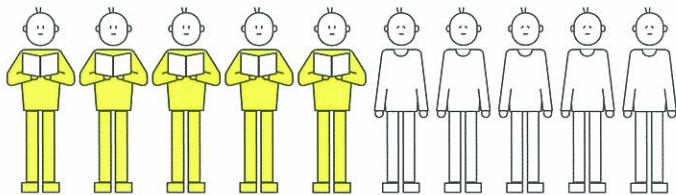


그래머존

NE능률  
영어교과서

대한민국 고등학생 **10명 중  
4.7명이 보는 교과서**

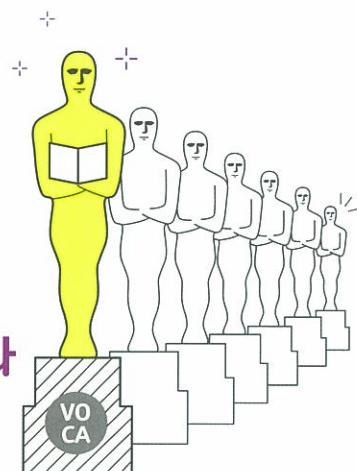
영어 고등 교과서 점유율 1위  
(7차, 2007 개정, 2009 개정, 2015 개정)



능률보카

그동안 판매된  
능률VOCA 1,100만 부

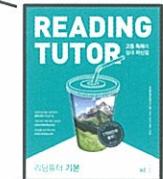
대한민국 박스오피스  
천만명을 넘은 영화  
단 **28개**



리딩튜터

그동안 판매된  
리딩튜터 1,800만 부  
차곡차곡 쌓으면 18만 미터

에베레스트  
**20배 높이**



180.000m



에베레스트 8,848m

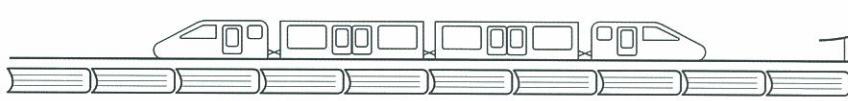


서울

그래머존

그동안 판매된 400만 부의 그래머존을 바닥에 쭉 ~ 깔면

**1000km 서울-부산 왕복 가능**



# GRAMMAR **Inside**

## LEVEL 2

지은이	NE능률 영어교육연구소
선임연구원	김지현
연구원	박효빈, 가민아
영문교열	Curtis Thompson, Angela Lan
디자인	민유화
맥편집	허문희
영업	한기영, 이경구, 박인규, 정철교, 김남준, 김남형, 이우현
마케팅	박혜선, 고유진, 김여진

Copyright©2022 by NE Neungyule, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of the copyright owner.

\* 본 교재의 독창적인 내용에 대한 일체의 무단 전재 · 모방은 법률로 금지되어 있습니다.

◆ 파본은 구매처에서 교환 가능합니다.



Let's grow together

NE능률이  
미래를  
창조합니다.

건강한 배움의 고백가치를 제공하겠다는 꿈을 실현하기 위해  
42년 동안 열심히 달려왔습니다.

앞으로도 끊임없는 연구와 노력을 통해  
당연한 것을 멈추지 않고

고객, 기업, 직원 모두가 함께 성장하는 NE능률이 되겠습니다.

NE능률의 모든 교재가 한 곳에 - 엔이 북스

# NE\_Books

[www.nebooks.co.kr](http://www.nebooks.co.kr) ▼

NE능률의 유초등 교재부터 중고생 참고서,  
토익·토플 수험서와 일반 영어까지!

PC는 물론 태블릿 PC, 스마트폰으로 언제 어디서나  
NE능률의 교재와 다양한 학습 자료를 만나보세요.

- ✓ 필요한 부가 학습 자료 바로 찾기
- ✓ 주요 인기 교재들을 한눈에 확인
- ✓ 나에게 딱 맞는 교재를 찾아주는 스마트 검색
- ✓ 함께 보면 좋은 교재와 다음 단계 교재 추천
- ✓ 회원 가입, 교재 후기 작성 등 사이트 활동 시 NE Point 적립



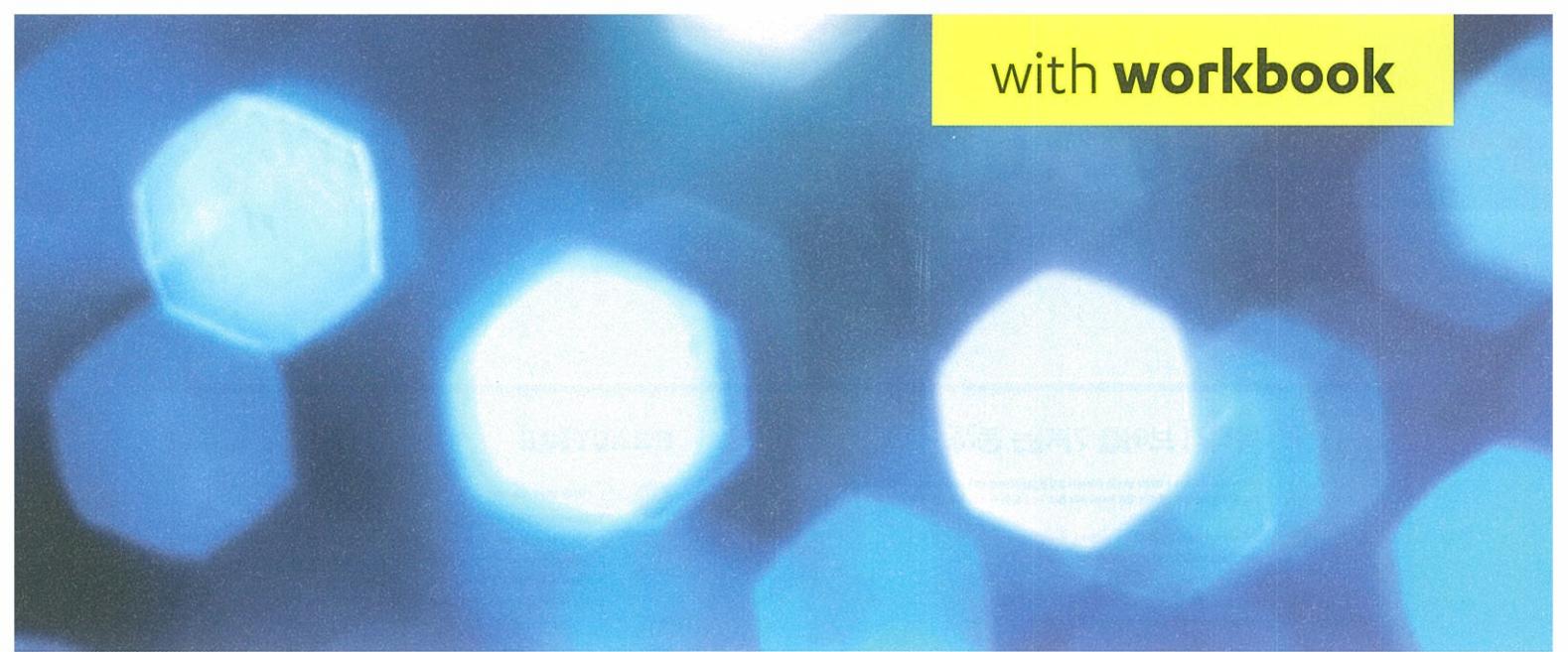
건강한  
배움의 즐거움

영어교과서 리딩튜터 능률보카 빠른독해 바른독해 수능만만 월등한 개념수학 유형 더블 토마토토익 NE 클래스

NE\_Build & Grow NE\_Times NE\_Kids(굿잡, 상상수프) NE\_능률 주니어랩  아이체인시

NE  
엔이

영어  
영문



with **workbook**

# GRAMMAR *inside*

## LEVEL 2

# STRUCTURES

UNIT  
02

## 목적격 보어를 가지는 동사

주어 + 동사 + 목적어 + 목적격 보어로 이루어진 문장을 5형식이라고 한다. 목적격 보어는 목적어의 성질이나 상태 등의 정보를 보충 설명하는 말로 동사에 따라 명사(구), 형용사(구), to부정사(구), 동사원형을 쓸 수 있다.

A 동사(call, make, name, ...) + 목적어 + 명사(구)  
The song **made** him a *world-famous star*.

B 동사(make, keep, find, think, ...) + 목적어 + 형용사(구)  
I **found** the math exam *difficult*. (*difficulty*)

C 동사(want, ask, expect, tell, advise, allow, order, ...) + 목적어 + to부정사(구)  
My uncle **advised** me to *read* a lot of books.

D 사역동사(make, let, have) + 목적어 + 동사원형

사역동사는 주어가 목적어에게 어떤 동작을 하도록 시키거나 허락하는 동사이다. ‘~기 ...하도록 하다/시키다’의 의미를 나타낸다.

James **let** me *sit* on his seat.

○根源 사역동사 목적어 보어로 to부정사를 쓴다.  
My teacher **got** me to *clean* the classroom.

○ 목적어는 목적격 보어로 동사원형과 to부정사를 쓸 때 쓸 수 있다.  
My brother **helped** me **(to)** *do* my homework.

E 지각동사(see, watch, hear, feel, smell, ...) + 목적어 + 동사원형

지각동사는 눈으로 보고 귀로 듣는 것 등과 같이 감각 기관을 통해 느끼는 것을 말하는 동사이다. ‘~가 ...하는 것을 보다/듣다/느끼다’ 등의 의미를 나타낸다.

The coach **watched** him *kick* the ball.

○ 목적어 전형 충성을 강조할 때 목적격 보어로 현대분사를 쓰기도 한다.  
The coach **watched** him *kicking* the ball.

### CHECK UP!

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I expected him  a gold medal.  
① win      ② wins      ③ to win
- 2 The doctor had the patient  drinking.  
① stop      ② stopping      ③ to stop
- 3 I heard someone  outside.  
① shout      ② shouted      ③ to shout

### PLUS : 4형식 문장 vs. 5형식 문장

- We made him a *birthday cake*. (4형식)  
간접목적어      직접목적어  
(him = a *birthday cake*)
- We made our leader. (5형식)  
목적어      목적격 보어  
(him = our leader)

## PRACTICE

STEP 1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Mom didn't let me (travel, to travel) alone.
- 2 The exam results made me (depressed, to depress).
- 3 My sister allowed me (wear, to wear) her skirt for a day.
- 4 I saw Tim (take, to take) a walk with his dog.
- 5 My father got me (water, to water) the garden.

STEP 2

입줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고쳐시오.

- 1 I felt the ground to shake like an earthquake.
- 2 They asked me take pictures of them.
- 3 He made his friends to wait a long time.
- 4 These gloves will keep you warmly.
- 5 John helped his brother choosing a computer.

STEP 3

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 적절한 형태로 바꿔 쓰시오.

- |                     |      |       |       |                                     |
|---------------------|------|-------|-------|-------------------------------------|
| 보기                  | tell | clean | knock | think                               |
| 1 My teacher got us |      |       |       | the playground.                     |
| 2 I heard someone   |      |       |       | on the door lightly.                |
| 3 Let me            |      |       |       | a story about my trip.              |
| 4 Tony told me      |      |       |       | twice before I answer the question. |

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하십시오.

- 1 나는 네가 주제를 정하길 바란다. (want, choose)  
→ I want to **choose** the topic.
- 2 그 소식은 우리를 행복하게 만들었다. (make, happy)  
→ The news makes us happy.
- 3 나는 무엇인가가 내 등을 건드리는 것을 느끼서 뒤틀어졌다. (something, touch)  
→ I turned around because something touched my back, so I turned around.
- 4 부모님은 내가 개를 키우는 것을 허락하지 않으실 것이다. (let, have)  
→ My parents won't let me **have** a dog.

## GRAMMAR POINT

### 1 GRAMMAR POINT

해당 Unit에서 배워야 할 핵심 문법들을

명확한 설명과 실용적인 예문으로 체계적으로 정리했습니다.

### 2 CHECK UP

핵심을 묻는 문제를 통해 Grammar Point에서

배운 내용을 이해했는지 확인할 수 있습니다.

### 3 PLUS

Grammar Point에서 제시한 핵심 문법 외의

추가 정보를 담았습니다.

## PRACTICE

1 Grammar Point에서 학습한 내용을 다양한 유형의 문제를 통해 자연스럽게 익힐 수 있습니다.

2 학교 내신 시험에 자주 등장하는 서술형 쓰기 연습문제를 매 Unit마다 경험할 수 있도록 하였습니다.

**GRAMMAR FOR WRITING**

여기에는 문장을 만드는 데 필요한 단어와 문장을 선택하세요.

**A** 시장에서 살 때 어떤 단어 사용?  
 1. These oranges.  
 2. I saw... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 3. He... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 4. He... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 5. My laptop... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 6. 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 7. His... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)

**B** 책장을 찾았습니다. 그에게 어떤 단어를 선택하세요?  
 1. I... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 2. And... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 3. Then... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 4. Just... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 5. So... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)  
 6. Daniel... 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전합니다. (단어를 선택하세요.)

**C** 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전했습니다. 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전했습니다.  
 1. I was watching my son... + He was practicing the violin.  
 2. I saw Mia yesterday... + She was talking to Henry.  
 3. Something was falling from the sky... + Did you see it?  
 4. I joined the book club... + My teacher got me to do it.  
 5. She felt the wind... + The wind was blowing through her hair.  
 6. I rode my bike to school... + My parents let me do it.

**D** 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전했습니다. 그녀는 그녀의 아버지에게 이름을 전했습니다.  
 1. Santa Claus is going... (children, girls)  
 2. He heard somebody... (knock at the door)  
 3. The police officer ordered... (the driver, stop the car)

Chapter 01 예제 가족 16

## GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

다양한 형태의 쓰기 문제를 풀어봄으로써 Grammar Point를 반복 학습하며 sentence writing의 기초를 마련할 수 있습니다.

**REVIEW TEST**

1-5 번째 문장을 완성하세요. 6-10 번째 문장을 완성하세요.

1. This onion soup tastes...  
 2. Harry lent ten dollars...  
 3. Dark clothes make people...  
 4. Mom advised me...  
 5. Did you see him...  
 6. The doctor...  
 7. I named my puppy Chico.  
 8. I found a musical...  
 9. Roy gave some roses...  
 10. Sean showed a...  
 11. I...  
 12. I...  
 13. I...  
 14. My brother never lets me...  
 15. My parents allowed me...  
 16. The teacher gave me some good...  
 17. My new classmate asked me a favor...  
 18. Andrew bought his daughter...  
 19. I saw the man...  
 20. I...  
 21. I...  
 22. I...  
 23. I...  
 24. I...  
 25. I...  
 26. I...  
 27. I...  
 28. I...  
 29. I...  
 30. I...  
 31. I...  
 32. I...  
 33. I...  
 34. I...  
 35. I...  
 36. I...  
 37. I...  
 38. I...  
 39. I...  
 40. I...  
 41. I...  
 42. I...  
 43. I...  
 44. I...  
 45. I...  
 46. I...  
 47. I...  
 48. I...  
 49. I...  
 50. I...  
 51. I...  
 52. I...  
 53. I...  
 54. I...  
 55. I...  
 56. I...  
 57. I...  
 58. I...  
 59. I...  
 60. I...  
 61. I...  
 62. I...  
 63. I...  
 64. I...  
 65. I...  
 66. I...  
 67. I...  
 68. I...  
 69. I...  
 70. I...  
 71. I...  
 72. I...  
 73. I...  
 74. I...  
 75. I...  
 76. I...  
 77. I...  
 78. I...  
 79. I...  
 80. I...  
 81. I...  
 82. I...  
 83. I...  
 84. I...  
 85. I...  
 86. I...  
 87. I...  
 88. I...  
 89. I...  
 90. I...  
 91. I...  
 92. I...  
 93. I...  
 94. I...  
 95. I...  
 96. I...  
 97. I...  
 98. I...  
 99. I...  
 100. I...

Chapter 01 예제 가족 17

## REVIEW TEST

실제 학교 시험과 가장 유사한 유형의 문제들로 구성하여 실전에 대비할 수 있습니다.

고난도 어법 문제와 서술형 문제를 대폭 수록하여 학교 내신 시험의 서술형 주관식 문항에 완벽 대비할 수 있도록 하였습니다.

**CHAPTER 01 예제 가족**

**UNIT 02** 목적격 보어를 가지는 동사

1-5 번째 문장을 완성하세요.

1. My English teacher had us... (to study) to study for the exam.  
 2. I saw a woman... (take) taking someone's bag.  
 3. Betty asked me... (come) to come over to her house.  
 4. I... (not help) (not help).  
 5. Babies always make me... (smile).  
 6. I want you... (listen) to listen to me.  
 7. I heard the people... (sing) to sing songs at night.  
 8. I'll let my son... (go) go to the summer camp.  
 9. They call him... (a hero). (a hero).  
 10. They don't allow me... (entering) to enter) the room.

6-10 번째 문장을 완성하세요.

1. I... (make) something... (to...).  
 2. They... (told) the... (to...).  
 3. My father... (asked) me... (study) harder.  
 4. She let her daughter... (take) a trip to France.  
 5. I... (had) her to fight with the boy... (not).  
 6. Mom... (got) me... (go) to the party.  
 7. We should... (keep) this food... (fresh).  
 8. Kevin... (asked) me... (help) him.  
 9. Grace... (helped) me... (move) my desk.  
 10. My teacher... (advised) us... (take) notes in class.

11-15 번째 문장을 완성하세요.

1. I... (spend) time... (in...).  
 2. They... (brought) something... (to...).  
 3. My father... (told) me... (not...).  
 4. She... (asked) me... (not...).  
 5. She... (had) him... (not...).  
 6. I... (had) him... (not...).  
 7. He... (helped) me... (not...).  
 8. I... (saw) them... (not...).  
 9. They... (expect) us... (something) different. (not...).  
 10. He... (didn't) let us... (his) picture. (take).

16-20 번째 문장을 완성하세요.

1. I... (have) a... (not...).  
 2. The letter of... (not...).  
 3. The... (not...).  
 4. I... (not...).  
 5. She... (not...).  
 6. We... (call) Michael Jackson.

21-25 번째 문장을 완성하세요.

1. I... (not...).  
 2. I... (not...).  
 3. I... (not...).  
 4. I... (not...).  
 5. I... (not...).  
 6. I... (not...).  
 7. I... (not...).  
 8. I... (not...).  
 9. I... (not...).  
 10. I... (not...).

Chapter 01 예제 가족 18

## WORKBOOK

각 Unit별 연습문제와 쓰기 문제, Chapter별 Review Test를 수록하였습니다.

더 많은 문제를 풀어봄으로써 문법을 보다 완벽하게 익힐 수 있도록 하였습니다.

# CONTENTS

## GRAMMAR BASICS 6

### CHAPTER 01 여러 가지 동사

Unit 01	감각동사와 수여동사	12
Unit 02	목적격 보어를 가지는 동사	14

### CHAPTER 02 시제

Unit 01	현재, 과거, 미래시제 / 진행형	24
Unit 02	현재완료	26

### CHAPTER 03 조동사

Unit 01	can, may, will	36
Unit 02	must, should	38
Unit 03	would like to, had better, used to	40

### CHAPTER 04 to부정사

Unit 01	명사적 용법의 to부정사	50
Unit 02	형용사적 용법의 to부정사	52
Unit 03	부사적 용법의 to부정사	54
Unit 04	to부정사의 의미상의 주어, too ~ to-v, enough to-v	56

### CHAPTER 05 동명사

Unit 01	동명사의 쓰임	66
Unit 02	동명사와 to부정사	68

### CHAPTER 06 분사

Unit 01	현재분사와 과거분사	78
Unit 02	분사구문	80

## CHAPTER 07 수동태

<b>Unit 01</b>	능동태와 수동태	90
<b>Unit 02</b>	수동태의 여러 가지 형태	92
<b>Unit 03</b>	주의해야 할 수동태	94

## CHAPTER 08 대명사

<b>Unit 01</b>	부정대명사 I	104
<b>Unit 02</b>	부정대명사 II	106
<b>Unit 03</b>	재귀대명사	108

## CHAPTER 09 비교

<b>Unit 01</b>	원급, 비교급, 최상급	118
<b>Unit 02</b>	비교 구문을 이용한 표현	120

## CHAPTER 10 접속사

<b>Unit 01</b>	시간, 이유, 결과의 접속사	130
<b>Unit 02</b>	조건, 양보의 접속사 / 명령문 + and, or ~	132

## CHAPTER 11 관계사

<b>Unit 01</b>	관계대명사	142
<b>Unit 02</b>	관계대명사 that, what / 관계대명사의 생략	144
<b>Unit 03</b>	관계부사	146

## CHAPTER 12 가정법

<b>Unit 01</b>	가정법 과거, 가정법 과거완료	156
<b>Unit 02</b>	I wish + 가정법, as if + 가정법	158

## CHAPTER 13 일치와 화법

<b>Unit 01</b>	시제의 일치	168
<b>Unit 02</b>	화법	170

# GRAMMAR BASICS

01

## 문장의 성분

- She is a famous violinist.  
주어      동사      보어
- I learned Spanish in high school.  
주어      동사      목적어      수식어

### 주어

움직임이나 상태의 주체가 되는 말로, 보통 문장의 맨 앞에 와서 '~은[는, 이, 가]'으로 해석된다. 주어로는 보통 명사나 대명사가 쓰이지만 동명사구나 to부정사구처럼 긴 주어가 쓰이기도 한다.

**Emma** is a Japanese teacher. **She** speaks Japanese very well.

**Meeting new people** is exciting.

### 동사

주어의 상태나 동작을 나타내는 말로, '~이다[하다]'로 해석된다. 대부분 한 단어로 쓰이지만, 두 단어 이상이 모여 하나의 동사 역할을 하기도 하고, 조동사의 도움을 받아 여러 가지 보충의 의미를 갖기도 한다.

**Julia** **is** a brave girl. **She** **enjoys** skydiving.

**She** **looked at** my face.

**You** **must finish** your homework tonight.

### 목적어

동사 다음에 오는 말로, 우리말의 '~을[를]'에 해당한다. 보통 목적어로는 명사, 대명사가 쓰이지만, 동명사구나 to부정사구처럼 긴 목적어가 오기도 한다.

**You** made **a mistake**.

**I** want **to be** a pilot.

### 보어

주어나 목적어에 대한 정보를 보충 설명해 주는 말이다. 주격 보어는 동사 뒤에서 주어를 보충 설명하고 목적격 보어는 목적어 뒤에서 목적어를 보충 설명한다.

**She** became **a doctor**. (**she** = a doctor) <주격 보어>

**We** elected **Angelina class president**. (**Angelina** = class president) <목적격 보어>

### 수식어

문장의 다른 요소들을 꾸며줘서 문장 내용을 풍부하게 만드는 말이다. 형용사처럼 쓰여 명사를 수식할 수도 있고, 부사처럼 쓰여 동사나 형용사, 다른 부사를 수식하기도 한다.

The **tall** boy is my son.

Alice works **very** hard.

They stayed **in a small hotel**.

02

품사

- Oh, grammar is very difficult but interesting.

감탄사	명사	동사 부사	형용사	접속사	형용사
동사			관사		

- It is an important part of a language.

## 대명사 관사 형용사 명사 전치사 명사

명사

사람, 동물, 사물, 장소 등 세상에 존재하는 모든 것들의 이름을 말한다. 문장에서 주어, 목적어, 보어로 쓰인다.  
(man, woman, girl, boy, Jane, Alice, Andy, computer, pen ...)

This **laptop** is his present. <주어>

I bought a **bag**. <목적어>

She is a **cellist**. <보어>

① 관사: 명사와 결합하여 명사의 의미와 성질을 나타내는 말로, 불특정한 (어떤) 하나를 나타내는  $a(n)$ 과 특정한 대상을 가리키는 *the*가 있다.

a table, an elephant, the computer ...

대명사

명사를 대신하는 말로. 문장에서 주어. 목적어. 보어로 쓰인다.

(I, you, we, he, she, it, they, this, that, these, those ...)

It is my old school album. <주어>

She loves him. <목적어>

The problem is **this**. 〈보어〉

동사

주어의 상태나 동작을 나타내는 말로 언제를 이야기하는지 주어가 무엇인지에 따라 형태가 달라진다

(be work look go come buy expect ...)

I am a movie star

You **are** a movie star

**He is** a movie star.

We will go to the cinema

We are going to the cinema.

We **went** to the cinema.

## 형용사

명사나 대명사의 성질, 상태 등을 설명하는 말로, 문장에서 명사나 대명사를 꾸며주는 수식어 또는 보어로 쓰인다.  
(lovely, nice, brave, bright, pretty, beautiful, smart ...)

Andy has **brown** eyes, **dark** hair, and **good** manners. 〈수식어〉  
You look **great** today. 〈보어〉

## 부사

문장에서 동사나 형용사, 다른 부사, 문장 전체를 꾸며주며, 시간, 장소, 방법, 정도, 빈도 등을 나타낸다.  
(then, now, yesterday, here, there, really, always, frequently, much ...)

This black dress fits you **well**. 〈동사를 꾸며줌〉  
My new boss is **very** strict. 〈형용사를 꾸며줌〉  
He ran **really** fast. 〈다른 부사를 꾸며줌〉  
**Fortunately**, we found a house in the forest. 〈문장 전체를 꾸며줌〉

## 전치사

명사(구)와 함께 쓰여 시간, 장소, 목적, 방법 등을 나타내는 말이다.  
(in, at, on, across, over, under, about, by, for, to, with ...)

I will meet Daniel **in** the lobby **at** noon. 〈장소, 시간〉  
We took a walk **across** the bridge. 〈장소〉  
I will go to Australia **for** a business meeting. 〈목적〉

## 접속사

단어와 단어, 구와 구, 절과 절을 이어주는 말이다.  
(and, but, or, so, when, before, after, until, because, if, that ...)

I bought a *T-shirt* **and** sunglasses. 〈단어와 단어〉  
He will stay *in* a hotel **or** *at* my home. 〈구와 구〉  
*I walked for seven hours*, **so** I feel exhausted. 〈절과 절〉

## 감탄사

기쁨, 슬픔, 놀람 등의 감정을 나타내는 말이다.  
(oh, wow, oops, bravo ...)

**Wow**, she is so beautiful!  
**Bravo**, you really did a good job!

## 03

## 구와 절

- Pam made a long and boring speech.  
명사구
- We waited until the couple came back.  
부사절

## 구

- 1 둘 이상의 단어가 모여 문장 내에서 명사, 형용사, 부사의 역할을 한다.  
a beautiful song, very pretty, here and there, in the park ...

- 2 문장에서의 역할에 따라 명사구, 형용사구, 부사구로 나뉜다.

- ① 명사구: 명사처럼 문장에서 주어, 목적어, 보어로 쓰인다.

The white cap is a present from my father. <주어>

We need something to eat. <목적어>

The problem is his poor health. <보어>

- ② 형용사구: 형용사처럼 문장에서 명사를 꾸며주는 수식어 또는 보어로 쓰인다.

The building on the hill is mine.

His voice was really attractive.

- ③ 부사구: 부사처럼 문장에서 동사나 형용사, 다른 부사, 문장 전체를 꾸며주는 수식어로 쓰인다.

We saw each other in the park.

Her name is easy to remember.

## 절

- 1 「주어 + 동사」를 포함한 여러 단어가 모여 문장 내에서 명사, 형용사, 부사의 역할을 한다.  
that you are honest, whom I love, when I was young ...

- 2 문장에서의 역할에 따라 명사절, 형용사절, 부사절로 나뉜다.

- ① 명사절: 명사처럼 문장에서 주어, 목적어, 보어로 쓰인다. 절이 주어로 쓰인 경우 가주어 it을 사용하는 경우가 많다.

That I loved her is true. (= It is true that I loved her.) <주어>

I didn't know that he was your father. <목적어>

The fact is that we should leave right now. <보어>

- ② 형용사절: 형용사처럼 문장에서 명사를 꾸며주는 수식어로 쓰인다.

It was the story which my grandmother told me.

- ③ 부사절: 부사처럼 문장에서 동사나 형용사, 다른 부사를 꾸며주는 수식어로 쓰인다.

Please lock the door before you leave the room.





# CHAPTER 01



## 여러 가지 동사

영어 문장에서는 동사의 종류에 따라  
뒤에 오는 말이 달라진다.

UNIT 01

감각동사와 수여동사

UNIT 02

목적격 보어를 가지는 동사

# 감각동사와 수여동사

A

## 감각동사 + 형용사 (2형식)

감각동사는 look, feel, smell, sound, taste와 같이 감각을 표현하는 동사로, 뒤에는 형용사를 쓴다.

- look + 형용사: ~하게 보이다
- smell + 형용사: ~한 냄새가 나다
- taste + 형용사: ~한 맛이 나다
- feel + 형용사: ~하게 느끼다
- sound + 형용사: ~하게 들리다

You **look** *different* without your glasses.

*cf.* 감각동사 + like + 명사(구)

That cloud **looks** *like* a puppy.

B

## 수여동사 + 간접목적어 + 직접목적어 (4형식)

수여동사는 give, send, tell, teach, make, buy와 같이 ‘~에게 …을 (해)주다’의 의미를 가진 동사로, ‘~에게(간접목적어)’와 ‘…을(직접목적어)’에 해당하는 두 개의 목적어를 가진다.

I **told** my best friend a secret.

간접목적어      직접목적어

「수여동사 + 간접목적어 + 직접목적어」는 「수여동사 + 직접목적어 + to/for/of + 간접목적어」의 형태로 바꿔 쓸 수 있다.

- 1 간접목적어 앞에 전치사 to를 쓰는 동사: give, send, show, tell, teach, lend, write, pass 등  
Ted **sent** me a text message last night.  
→ Ted **sent** a text message **to** me last night.

- 2 간접목적어 앞에 전치사 for를 쓰는 동사: make, buy, get 등  
My friend **made** me a cake on my birthday.  
→ My friend **made** a cake **for** me on my birthday.

- 3 간접목적어 앞에 전치사 of를 쓰는 동사: ask  
Can I **ask** you a favor?  
→ Can I **ask** a favor **of** you?

### CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 The singer's voice sounds \_\_\_\_\_.  
 ① beauty      ② beautiful      ③ beautifully
- 2 A Canadian teacher taught English \_\_\_\_\_ us at school.  
 ① to      ② for      ③ of

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.2

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Your sneakers look (new, newly).
- 2 Your plan for summer vacation sounds (interesting, interestingly).
- 3 I will tell (him my secret, my secret him).
- 4 Alan made a meal (for, of) his friends.
- 5 The man asked (me, of me) my phone number.

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 I would like to ask a favor to you.
- 2 The apple pie tastes deliciously.
- 3 Lily showed a note from James for me.
- 4 I will get some sandwiches of you.

STEP  
3

두 문장의 의미가 같도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 Lewis sent me some files by email.  
→ Lewis sent some files \_\_\_\_\_ by email.
- 2 Jay wrote his parents a letter.  
→ Jay wrote a letter \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My parents bought me a winter coat for Christmas.  
→ My parents bought a winter coat \_\_\_\_\_ for Christmas.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 Ron은 빗속에서 춥다고 느꼈다. (cold)  
→ Ron \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain.
- 2 그 감자튀김은 맛이 짜다. (salty)  
→ The french fries \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Emma는 나에게 그녀의 공책을 빌려주었다. (notebook)  
→ Emma lent \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 나는 Chris에게 내 일기를 보여 주었다. (diary)  
→ I showed \_\_\_\_\_ Chris.
- 5 부모님께서 내게 나의 선생님의 성함을 물어보셨다. (teacher's name)  
→ My parents asked \_\_\_\_\_.

# 목적격 보어를 가지는 동사

「주어 + 동사 + 목적어 + 목적격 보어」로 이루어진 문장을 5형식이라고 한다. 목적격 보어는 목적어의 성질이나 상태 등의 정보를 보충 설명하는 말로 동사에 따라 명사(구), 형용사(구), to부정사(구), 동사원형을 쓸 수 있다.

A

**동사(call, make, name, ...)** + 목적어 + 명사(구)

The song **made** him a *world-famous star*.

B

**동사(make, keep, find, think, ...)** + 목적어 + 형용사(구)

I **found** the math exam *difficult*. (*difficultly*)

C

**동사(want, ask, expect, tell, advise, allow, order, ...)** + 목적어 + to부정사(구)

My uncle **advised** me *to read* a lot of books.

D

**사역동사(make, let, have)** + 목적어 + 동사원형

사역동사는 주어가 목적어에게 어떤 동작을 하도록 시키거나 허락하는 동사이다. ‘~가 …하도록 하다/시키다’의 의미를 나타낸다.

James **let** me *sit* on his seat.

① get은 사역의 의미지만 목적격 보어로 to부정사를 쓴다.

My teacher **got** me *to clean* the classroom.

② help는 목적격 보어로 동사원형과 to부정사 둘 다 쓸 수 있다.

My brother **helped** me *(to) do* my homework.

E

**지각동사(see, watch, hear, feel, smell, ...)** + 목적어 + 동사원형

지각동사는 눈으로 보고 귀로 듣는 것 등과 같이 감각 기관을 통해 느끼는 것을 말하는 동사이다. ‘~가 …하는 것을 보다/듣다/느끼다’ 등의 의미를 나타낸다.

The coach **watched** him *kick* the ball.

① 동작이 진행 중임을 강조할 때 목적격 보어로 현재분사를 쓰기도 한다.

The coach **watched** him *kicking* the ball.



## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I expected him \_\_\_\_\_ a gold medal.  
Ⓐ win Ⓑ wins Ⓒ to win
- 2 The doctor had the patient \_\_\_\_\_ drinking.  
Ⓐ stop Ⓑ stopping Ⓒ to stop
- 3 I heard someone \_\_\_\_\_ outside.  
Ⓐ shout Ⓑ shouted Ⓒ to shout

## PLUS : 4형식 문장 vs. 5형식 문장

- We made him a birthday cake. <4형식>  
간접목적어      직접목적어  
(him ≠ a birthday cake)
- We made him our leader. <5형식>  
목적어      목적격 보어  
(him = our leader)

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.2

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Mom didn't let me (travel, to travel) alone.
- 2 The exam results made me (depressed, to depress).
- 3 My sister allowed me (wear, to wear) her skirt for a day.
- 4 I saw Tim (take, to take) a walk with his dog.
- 5 My father got me (water, to water) the garden.

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 I felt the ground to shake like an earthquake.
- 2 They asked me take pictures of them.
- 3 He made his friends to wait a long time.
- 4 These gloves will keep you warmly.
- 5 John helped his brother choosing a computer.

STEP  
3

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 적절한 형태로 바꿔 쓰시오.

보기

tell

clean

knock

think

- 1 My teacher got us \_\_\_\_\_ the playground.
- 2 I heard someone \_\_\_\_\_ on the door lightly.
- 3 Let me \_\_\_\_\_ you a story about my trip.
- 4 Tony told me \_\_\_\_\_ twice before I answer the question.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 나는 네가 주제를 정하길 바란다. (want, choose)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ the topic.
- 2 그 소식은 우리를 행복하게 만들었다. (make, happy)  
→ The news \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 나는 무엇인가가 내 등을 건드리는 것을 느껴서 뒤틀어져버렸다. (something, touch)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ my back, so I turned around.
- 4 부모님은 내가 개를 키우는 것을 허락하지 않으실 것이다. (let, have)  
→ My parents won't \_\_\_\_\_ a dog.

# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 이 오렌지들은 신맛이 난다. (sour)  
→ These oranges \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 그 부부는 그들의 아기를 Alice라고 이름 지었다. (name, baby)  
→ The couple \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 너는 머리를 그렇게 자르니 어려 보인다. (young)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ with that haircut.
- 4 내 노트북 컴퓨터가 고장이 나서, Jake는 내가 그의 것을 사용하도록 허락했다. (allow, use)  
→ My laptop didn't work, so Jake \_\_\_\_\_ his.
- 5 이 파스타는 카레 같은 냄새가 난다. (smell, curry)  
→ This pasta \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 그의 어머니는 그가 점심 식사 후에 설거지를 하도록 시키셨다. (wash the dishes)  
→ His mother made \_\_\_\_\_ after lunch.
- 7 나는 Bill에게 내 텐트를 빌려 주었는데, 그는 아직 그것을 돌려주지 않았다. (lend, tent)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_, but he didn't return it yet.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 이 호수는 매우 깊어 보인다. (lake, looks, this, deep, very)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Ann은 뒤에서 누군가가 자신의 이름을 부르는 것을 들었다. (heard, her, name, call, someone)  
→ Ann \_\_\_\_\_ behind her.
- 3 이 아이스박스는 음식을 신선하게 유지해 준다. (food, keeps, fresh)  
→ This icebox \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 그녀의 어머니가 그녀에게 웨딩드레스를 만들어 주셨다. (made, a, her, dress, for, wedding)  
→ Her mother \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 그는 그의 이웃에게 한 가지 부탁을 했다. (of, a, neighbor, asked, favor, his)  
→ He \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Daniel은 그들에게 그의 흉터를 보여 주었다. (to, showed, scar, them, his)  
→ Daniel \_\_\_\_\_.

## C

다음 두 문장을 보기처럼 한 문장으로 만들 때 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

보기 I was watching my son. + He was practicing the violin.  
 → I was watching my son practice[practicing] the violin.

1 I saw Mia yesterday. + She was talking to Henry.

→ I \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.

2 Something was falling from the sky. + Did you see it?

→ Did you see \_\_\_\_\_?

3 I joined the book club. + My teacher got me to do it.

→ My teacher \_\_\_\_\_.

4 I worked until late last night. + My boss made me do it.

→ My boss \_\_\_\_\_.

5 She felt the wind. + The wind was blowing through her hair.

→ She \_\_\_\_\_.

6 I ride my bike to school. + My parents let me do it.

→ My parents \_\_\_\_\_.

## D

그림을 보고 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

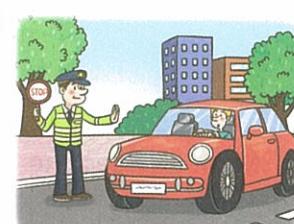
1



2



3



1 Santa Claus is giving \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (children, gifts)

2 He heard somebody \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (knock on the door)

3 The police officer ordered \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (the driver, stop the car)

# REVIEW TEST

[1–5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

**1** This onion soup tastes \_\_\_\_\_.

- ① well
- ② salty
- ③ badly
- ④ sweetly
- ⑤ deliciously

**2** Harry lent ten dollars \_\_\_\_\_ me yesterday.

- ① to
- ② for
- ③ of
- ④ in
- ⑤ from

**3** Dark clothes make people \_\_\_\_\_ thinner.

- ① look
- ② looks
- ③ looked
- ④ looking
- ⑤ to look

**4** Mom advised me \_\_\_\_\_ some rest.

- ① get
- ② gets
- ③ to get
- ④ got
- ⑤ gotten

[6–7] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

- 6**
- ① The baby's skin feels smoothly.
  - ② I felt someone touching my hand.
  - ③ Your brother looks like your father.
  - ④ My teacher made me clean the toilet.
  - ⑤ I'll buy my brother a birthday present.

- 7**
- ① I named my puppy Choco.
  - ② I found the musical excite.
  - ③ He didn't ask me anything.
  - ④ The noise kept me awake all night.
  - ⑤ She asked me to come back early.

## 빈칸

**8** 다음 빈칸에 to가 들어갈 수 없는 것은?

- ① Mr. Brown taught science \_\_\_\_\_ us.
- ② I sent an email \_\_\_\_\_ you yesterday.
- ③ Roy gave some roses \_\_\_\_\_ Jen.
- ④ Midori got a plane ticket to Osaka \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- ⑤ Sean showed a beautiful picture \_\_\_\_\_ her.

[9–11] 빈칸에 들어갈 말로 알맞지 않은 것을 고르시오.

**5** Did you see him \_\_\_\_\_ this room?

- ① leaves
- ② leaving
- ③ to leave
- ④ left
- ⑤ was leaving

**9** I think that it \_\_\_\_\_ great.

- ① looks
- ② makes
- ③ tastes
- ④ smells
- ⑤ sounds

**10** My parents \_\_\_\_\_ me clean up my desk.

- ① had      ② got      ③ made  
④ watched    ⑤ helped

**11** The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ him to take the pill after surgery.

- ① got      ② told      ③ let  
④ advised    ⑤ allowed

**12** 다음 우리말을 영어로 바르게 옮긴 것은?

그 선생님은 학생들이 계속 조용히 하도록 했다.

- ① The teacher had the students kept quiet.  
② The teacher had the students kept quietly.  
③ The teacher had the students keep quiet.  
④ The teacher had the students keep quietly.  
⑤ The teacher had the students keeping quiet.

[13-15] ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**13** I saw the man \_\_\_\_\_ a woman's purse. (steal)

**14** My brother never lets me \_\_\_\_\_ his computer. (use)

**15** My parents allowed me \_\_\_\_\_ on a trip with my friends. (go)

서술형      빈출

[16-18] 두 문장의 의미가 같도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

**16** My teacher gave me some good advice.

→ My teacher gave some good advice

**17** My new classmate asked me a favor.

→ My new classmate asked a favor

**18** Andrew bought his daughter ice cream after lunch.

→ Andrew bought ice cream \_\_\_\_\_ after lunch.

**19** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것은?

- ① Lucy found the book usefully.
- ② I saw him walk down the dark street.
- ③ I feel sadly when I listen to the song.
- ④ He expected the package arrive today.
- ⑤ Dad had me to bring his jacket.

**서술형**

[20-22] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**20** 좋은 약은 쓴 맛이 난다. (bitter)

→ Good medicine \_\_\_\_\_.

**21** 경비원은 내가 건물로 들어가도록 허락하지 않았다.  
(not, let, enter)

→ The guard \_\_\_\_\_ the building.

**22** 영어 선생님이 나에게 영어로 일기를 쓰게 하셨다.  
(get, keep a diary)

→ My English teacher \_\_\_\_\_ in English.

**23** 문장의 형식이 나머지 넷과 다른 것은?

- ① I want the air to be clean.
- ② She made the kids wash their hands.
- ③ The café doesn't let people use straws.
- ④ Dad made us fresh potato salad.
- ⑤ They thought the rules unfair.

**서술형**

[24-25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바로 게 배열하시오.

**24** 그 이야기는 이상하게 들렸지만 사실이었다.  
(sounded, story, the, strange)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, but it was true.

**25** 나는 여동생이 그녀의 방에서 바이올린을 켜는 소리를 들었다.

(play, the, my, heard, sister, I, violin)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ in her room.

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① I told my friends the news.
- ② This bread tastes good with butter.
- ③ This soup looks like spicy.
- ④ Can you get some water of me?
- ⑤ I'll send an invitation to you tomorrow.

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. I saw the singer dancing on stage.
- b. My teacher allowed us play football.
- c. My parents let me go to the concert.
- d. I got my brother to do his homework.
- e. Her book made her very successfully.

- ① a, b, c      ② a, b, d  
 ③ a, c, d      ④ b, c, e  
 ⑤ c, d, e

고난도

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- We found the sofa very comfortable.
- I helped my dad fix his car.
- Mom asked me cleaning the house.
- Jay had the waiter to bring more water.
- I heard Stewart shout at his brother.

- ① 1개      ② 2개      ③ 3개  
 ④ 4개      ⑤ 5개

서술형

[29-30] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** My boyfriend gave a card for me on my birthday.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**30** Parents should keep their kids safe in any situation.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

서술형

**31** 우리말과 일치하도록 주어진 조건에 맞게 문장을 완성하시오.

그는 우리가 길을 찾는 것을 도와주었다.

- 〈조건〉 1. find, help, the way를 이용할 것  
 2. 6단어로 쓸 것

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

서술형 고난도

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** Katie just came back from her business trip. She looks very tiredly.  
 (1개)

**33** I'm going to dance at the school festival with Justin. He is a good dancer, so I expect him teach me how to dance. (1개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- You <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ different without your glasses. 너는 안경을 안 쓰니 달라 보인다. **Unit 01 - A**
- That cloud <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a puppy. 저 구름은 강아지처럼 보인다. **Unit 01 - A**
- I **told** my best friend a secret. 나는 가장 친한 친구에게 비밀을 말했다. **Unit 01 - B**
- Ted **sent** me a text message last night.  
→ Ted **sent** a text message <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me last night.  
Ted는 지난밤 내게 문자 메시지를 보냈다. **Unit 01 - B**
- My friend **made** me a cake on my birthday.  
→ My friend **made** a cake <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me on my birthday.  
나의 친구가 내 생일에 내게 케이크를 만들어 주었다. **Unit 01 - B**
- Can I **ask** you a favor?  
→ Can I **ask** a favor <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
당신에게 부탁 하나를 해도 될까요? **Unit 01 - B**
- The song <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ him **a world-famous star**.  
그 노래는 그를 세계적으로 유명한 스타로 만들었다. **Unit 02 - A**
- I **found** the math exam <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. 나는 그 수학 시험이 어렵다고 생각했다. **Unit 02 - B**
- My uncle **advised** me <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of books.  
나의 삼촌은 내게 책을 많이 읽으라고 조언했다. **Unit 02 - C**
- James **let** me <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on his seat. James는 내가 그의 자리에 앉도록 했다. **Unit 02 - D**
- The coach **watched** him <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the ball.  
그 코치는 그가 공을 차는 것을 지켜보았다. **Unit 02 - E**

## Q Answers

1 look 2 looks like 3 to 4 for 5 of 6 made 7 difficult 8 to read 9 sit 10 kick[kicking]

ESSENTIAL RULES OF  
— X —  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR  
— X —

# CHAPTER 02



## 시제

**UNIT 01** 현재, 과거, 미래시제 / 진행형

**UNIT 02** 현재완료

시제란 동사의 형태 변화를 통해 동작이  
일어난 때를 표현하는 것을 말한다.

# 현재, 과거, 미래시제 / 진행형

A

## 현재시제

현재의 사실이나 상태, 변함없는 진리, 반복되는 일 및 습관을 나타낼 때 쓴다.

My family **lives** in a small town.

The sun **rises** in the east.

Kate **checks** her email every day.

B

## 과거시제

이미 지난 과거의 일이나 상태를 나타낼 때 사용하며 과거를 나타내는 표현(yesterday, last ~, ~ ago)과 자주 함께 쓰인다.

Jake **bought** a new smartphone yesterday.

C

## 미래시제

1 will + 동사원형: 미래에 대한 예측, 주어의 의지나 즉흥적으로 결심한 일을 나타낼 때 쓴다.

The postman **will arrive** here at about two o'clock.

Mom, I **will help** you clean the living room.

2 be going to + 동사원형: 미래에 대한 예측이나, 이미 정해진 미래의 계획을 나타낼 때 쓴다.

Look at the sky. It **is going to rain** soon. (= It **will rain** soon.)

I'm **going to attend** the meeting next week.

D

## 진행형

1 현재진행형: 「be동사 현재형 + v-ing」의 형태로, 현재 진행 중인 일을 나타낼 때 쓴다.

She **is playing** an online game now.

2 과거진행형: 「be동사 과거형 + v-ing」의 형태로, 과거 시점에서 진행 중이었던 일을 나타낼 때 쓴다.

Nick **was talking** on the phone when I saw him.

① 소유, 감각, 감정, 인지 등을 나타내는 동사(have, see, hear, like, know, believe 등)는 진행형으로 쓰지 않는다.

Mr. Lee **has** two sons.

Mr. Lee ~~is having~~ two sons.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 The earth \_\_\_\_\_ around the sun.

- Ⓐ goes Ⓑ went Ⓒ will go

2 James \_\_\_\_\_ to Italy last year.

- Ⓐ travels Ⓑ traveled Ⓒ will travel

3 Molly \_\_\_\_\_ when I called.

- Ⓐ sleeps Ⓑ is sleeping Ⓒ was sleeping

**PLUS :** 미래를 나타내는  
현재시제와 현재진행형

• 미래의 확정된 공식 일정, 계획 등은 현재시제로 나타낼 수도 있다.

The meeting **begins** at ten o'clock.

• 가까운 미래의 계획은 현재진행형으로 나타낼 수도 있다.

She **is coming** next Friday.

# PRACTICE

Q Answer Key p.3

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 He (takes, is taking) a walk after dinner every day.
- 2 She (enters, entered) the university last year.
- 3 I (am taking, was taking) a shower when the doorbell rang.
- 4 I (will send, sent) an email to Hal next week.

STEP  
2

( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ a pizza an hour ago, but it is not here yet. (order)
- 2 Water \_\_\_\_\_ at 100°C. (boil)
- 3 She was \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at that time. (eat)
- 4 My dog always \_\_\_\_\_ happily when it snows. (run)

STEP  
3

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 Paul is knowing her very well.
- 2 They will take this picture two years ago.
- 3 She is singing a pop song when I saw her.
- 4 I going to visit my grandparents tomorrow.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 Tony는 다음 달에 요가를 배울 예정이다. (learn)  
→ Tony \_\_\_\_\_ yoga next month.
- 2 그는 부엌에서 설거지를 하고 있다. (wash dishes)  
→ He \_\_\_\_\_ in the kitchen.
- 3 그녀는 지난주에 내 컴퓨터를 고쳐 주었다. (fix, computer)  
→ She \_\_\_\_\_ last week.
- 4 나는 매일 아침 한 시간씩 자전거를 탄다. (ride, bicycle)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour every morning.

# 현재완료

A

## 과거 vs. 현재완료

- 1 과거: 현재와는 상관없이 과거의 사실만을 나타낼 때 쓴다.

He **lost** his watch yesterday. (현재 찾았는지 알 수 없음)

- 2 현재완료: 과거의 한 시점에서 일어난 일이 현재까지 영향을 줄 때 쓴다.

He **has lost** his watch. (현재까지 잃어버린 상태임)

- ① 과거를 나타내는 표현(yesterday, last ~, ~ ago 등)은 현재완료와 함께 쓸 수 없다.

~~He has lost his watch yesterday.~~

B

## 현재완료: have[has] + v-ed

현재완료는 완료, 경험, 계속, 결과 등의 의미를 나타낸다. 부정문은 「have[has] + not + v-ed」, 의문문은 「Have[Has] + 주어 + v-ed ~?」이다.

- 1 완료: '막 ~했다'의 의미로, 어떤 동작이 현재에 막 완료되었음을 나타낸다. 주로 already, just, yet 등과 함께 쓰인다.

I **have just eaten** a sandwich.

- 2 경험: '~한 적이 있다'의 의미로, 현재까지의 경험을 나타낸다. 주로 ever, never, before, once 등과 함께 쓰인다.

I've never **eaten** Thai food.

- 3 계속: '지금까지 계속 ~해 왔다'의 의미로, 과거의 어느 시점부터 현재까지 어떤 동작이나 상태가 계속되고 있음을 나타낸다. 주로 since, for 등과 함께 쓰인다.

He **has had** dogs since he was young.

- 4 결과: '~해 버렸다'의 의미로, 과거 행동으로 인한 결과가 현재까지 영향을 미치고 있음을 나타낸다.

Julie **has gone** to London. (So she is not here now.)

cf. Julie **has been** to London. <경험>

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I have \_\_\_\_\_ to his house once.

Ⓐ be Ⓑ being Ⓒ been

- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ each other since we were kids.

Ⓐ know Ⓑ knew Ⓒ have known

- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ the actor here yesterday.

Ⓐ see Ⓑ saw Ⓒ have seen

- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ my purse at home, so I can't buy anything now.

Ⓐ leave Ⓑ am leaving Ⓒ have left

## + PLUS : for vs. since

- for + 기간: ~동안

He has been ill **for** a week.

- since + 시점: ~ 아래로

He has been ill **since** last week.

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.3

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I (don't see, haven't seen) the film yet.
- 2 She (sent, has sent) me an email last month.
- 3 It (snowed, has snowed) heavily since yesterday.
- 4 He (has been, has gone) to Paris, so you can't meet him now.

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 A: Do you ever bake bread?  
B: Yes, I have several times.
- 2 She has been in Seoul for 2015.
- 3 Bob has learned how to drive three years ago.
- 4 They lived here since last year.

STEP  
3

다음을 현재완료 문장으로 바꿀 때, 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 She lost her glasses, so she doesn't have them now.  
→ She \_\_\_\_\_ her glasses.
- 2 Winter came, and it is winter now.  
→ Winter \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My best friend went to Tokyo. He is not here now.  
→ My best friend \_\_\_\_\_ to Tokyo.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 나는 그의 전화번호를 잊어버렸다. (forget)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ his phone number.
- 2 그는 여기서 5년째 일해 왔다. (work, here)  
→ He \_\_\_\_\_ five years.
- 3 나는 벌써 기차표를 샀다. (already, buy)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ a train ticket.
- 4 나는 중국에 한 번 가 본 적이 있다. (be)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ China once.
- 5 너는 로봇 청소기를 사용해 본 적이 있니? (ever, use)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ a robot vacuum cleaner?

# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 우리는 방금 이 도시로 이사 왔다. (just, move)

→ We \_\_\_\_\_ to this city.

- 2 Lia는 일요일에 자원봉사를 할 것이다. (do volunteer work)

→ Lia \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday.

- 3 우리 형은 4년째 저 안경을 껴 왔다. (wear, glasses)

→ My brother \_\_\_\_\_ four years.

- 4 그녀는 나의 부모님을 두 번 만난 적이 있다. (meet, parents)

→ She \_\_\_\_\_ twice.

- 5 그는 그의 방에서 머리를 말리는 중이다. (dry one's hair)

→ He \_\_\_\_\_ in his room.

- 6 나뭇잎들은 가을에 빨갛고 노랗게 변한다. (turn, red and yellow, fall)

→ Leaves \_\_\_\_\_.

- 7 나는 2년 전에 초등학교를 졸업했다. (graduate from, elementary school)

→ I \_\_\_\_\_ two years ago.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 너는 이번 주말에 무엇을 할 예정이니? (are, to, you, going, what, do)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend?

- 2 내 여동생이 내 이어폰을 고장 내서, 나는 음악을 들을 수 없다.

(my, has, my, sister, broken, earphones)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, so I can't listen to music.

- 3 Sue는 어린아이였을 때부터 노래하는 것을 좋아했다. (has, since, liked, to, Sue, sing)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ she was a kid.

- 4 네가 전화했을 때 나는 영화를 보고 있었다. (watching, when, a, was, I, movie)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ you called.

- 5 우리 어머니는 내년에 마흔 살이 되신다. (mother, years, will, my, forty, old, be)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ next year.

- 6 그 식당은 매일 아침 10시에 문을 연다. (the, at, restaurant, opens, ten o'clock)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ every morning.

## C

빈칸에 알맞은 동사를 보기에서 골라 적절한 시제로 바꿔 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

## [1-4]

보기      be      eat      hear      check

- 1 An elephant only \_\_\_\_\_ plants, not meat.
- 2 Robert \_\_\_\_\_ a strange sound last night.
- 3 Tim is back from Greece. He \_\_\_\_\_ to Greece three times.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ my email every day. Emails are important to my work.

## [5-8]

보기      have      walk      help      teach

- 5 The singer \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of fans in Korea now.
- 6 My father \_\_\_\_\_ math at a high school since 1995.
- 7 I \_\_\_\_\_ to school when I met my teacher.
- 8 A: Jay! Help me move this sofa, please.  
B: Sure. I \_\_\_\_\_ you.

## D

Lucy의 이번 주 일정표를 보고 일정에 맞게 문장을 완성하시오.

WED	THU	FRI	SAT	SUN
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ take a math quiz</li> </ul> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ go to the dentist</li> </ul> 	<span style="border: 1px solid red; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">FRI</span> <i>today</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ have dinner with Ryan</li> </ul> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ practice the violin</li> </ul> 

- 1 She \_\_\_\_\_ on Wednesday.
- 2 She \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- 3 She \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
- 4 She \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday.

# REVIEW TEST

[1-5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

**1**

Water \_\_\_\_\_ at 0°C.

- ① freezes
- ② froze
- ③ will freeze
- ④ freezing
- ⑤ has frozen

**2**

Emma \_\_\_\_\_ to Laos last month.

- ① travels
- ② traveled
- ③ is traveling
- ④ will travel
- ⑤ has traveled

**3**

Harry \_\_\_\_\_ the baseball game now.

- ① watched
- ② watching
- ③ is watching
- ④ was watching
- ⑤ have watched

**4**

Jake \_\_\_\_\_ a smartphone now.

- ① have
- ② has
- ③ is having
- ④ will have
- ⑤ has had

**5**

I \_\_\_\_\_ to the concert hall five times.

- ① am
- ② have
- ③ going
- ④ have been
- ⑤ will be

[6-7] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

**6**

- ① We have not decided yet.
- ② She got married five years ago.
- ③ Light was faster than sound.
- ④ I was talking with Tom then.
- ⑤ He teaches English at the school.

**7**

- ① I will help you carry the box.
- ② He has not cleaned his desk yet.
- ③ They are waiting for a bus now.
- ④ He has gone to Sydney last year.
- ⑤ She is going to meet him tonight.

**8**

빈칸에 들어갈 말이 순서대로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- She has studied physics \_\_\_\_\_ three years.
- He has run the company \_\_\_\_\_ 2006.

- ① in – at
- ② for – at
- ③ since – for
- ④ in – since
- ⑤ for – since

빈출

[9-10] 다음 중 보기의 밑줄 친 부분과 쓰임이 같은 것을 고르시오.

**9**

보기 He has just been to the market.

- ① I have heard the song before.
- ② I have already read the magazine.
- ③ Have you ever been to South Africa?
- ④ I have used this pen since last year.
- ⑤ My dad has had this car for ten years.

**10**

보기 He has worked on the report for two days.

- ① He has forgotten her name.
- ② I have never seen a real rainbow.
- ③ Have you washed your car yet?
- ④ They have just finished dinner.
- ⑤ How long have you been in this city?

**14**

빈칸에 들어갈 말이 순서대로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- He \_\_\_\_\_ ill last Saturday.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ ill since last Saturday.

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| ① is – was       | ② was – is       |
| ③ was – was      | ④ was – has been |
| ⑤ has been – was |                  |

## 서술형

[11-12] ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**11**

Next week's festival \_\_\_\_\_ fun. (be)

## 서술형

[15-16] 밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

**15**

I have stayed at the Sunshine Hotel last summer.

**16**

Josh looks for a new house now.

**12**

Christina \_\_\_\_\_ in this house since she was ten. (live)

## 서술형

[17-18] 다음 두 문장을 한 문장으로 바꿀 때, 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

**17**

Mom went to Paris. She is not here now.

→ Mom \_\_\_\_\_ to Paris.

## 빈칸

**13** 밑줄 친 부분의 쓰임이 올바른 것은?

- ① He was riding a bicycle next week.
- ② She is run a blog now.
- ③ The game will be exciting yesterday.
- ④ He has lost his watch a few days ago.
- ⑤ I have been a designer since last year.

**18**

When Robin first saw Mindy, he liked her. He still likes her.

→ Robin \_\_\_\_\_ he first saw her.

## 서술형

[19-21] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**19** 너 독도에 가 본 적 있니? (ever, be)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ to Dokdo?

**20** 누군가가 내 지갑을 훔쳐가서 나는 지금 아무것도 살 수 없다. (steal, purse)

→ Because someone \_\_\_\_\_, I can't buy anything now.

**21** Amy는 작년에 그녀의 남자 친구를 만났다. (meet, boyfriend)

→ Amy \_\_\_\_\_ last year.

**22** 다음 대화의 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말은?

A: It's hot in this room!

B: Really? Then I \_\_\_\_\_ the window.

- |               |          |
|---------------|----------|
| ① open        | ② opens  |
| ③ will open   | ④ opened |
| ⑤ have opened |          |

## 서술형

[23-25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

**23** 그 당시에 나는 친구에게 이메일을 쓰고 있었다. (email, my, to, was, an, I, friend, writing)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ at that time.

**24** 나는 그 영화 동호회에 가입할 예정이다.

(I, to, the, am, movie club, join, going)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

**25** 우리는 십 년째 친구이다. (have, friends, we, for, been)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ ten years.

## 고난도

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① I am knowing those girls.
- ② She will play the piano since 2018.
- ③ Did you go shopping yesterday?
- ④ The new movie is coming soon.
- ⑤ He is wearing a hat when I saw him.

**27** 다음 문장이 어법상 옳으면 O, 틀리면 X의 철자를 선택 할 때, 순서대로 만들어지는 단어는?

	O	X
I am liking the boy band BTS.	f	p
I went fishing last weekend.	a	o
Do you ever been to Jeonju?	s	r
It has rained since last Sunday.	k	t

- ① past                  ② park  
③ pork                  ④ fast  
⑤ fork

**30** I was hearing someone crying.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- I will turn off the light.
- Fruit is having a lot of vitamins.
- People needed water when they are thirsty.
- I have lived in Korea five years ago.
- Andy has studied in America for two years.

- ① 1개                  ② 2개                  ③ 3개  
④ 4개                  ⑤ 5개

**31** This movie has won lots of awards last year.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

서술형

[29-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** I'm going to watch a basketball game this weekend.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

서술형      고난도

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** I am believing that Anna is innocent.  
(1개)

**33** John and I have known each other for elementary school. At that time, he was shorter than me, but now he was taller. (2개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- My family **lives** in a small town. 내 가족은 소도시에 산다. **Unit 01 - A**
- The sun <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in the east. 태양은 동쪽에서 뜬다. **Unit 01 - A**
- Kate **checks** her email every day. Kate는 그녀의 이메일을 매일 확인한다. **Unit 01 - A**
- Jake <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a new smartphone yesterday. Jake는 어제 새 스마트폰을 샀다. **Unit 01 - B**
- The postman **will arrive** here at about two o'clock. 우체부가 2시경에 여기 도착할 것이다. **Unit 01 - C**
- Mom, I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you clean the living room.  
엄마, 거실 청소하는 것을 제가 도와 드릴게요. **Unit 01 - C**
- Look at the sky. It **is** <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ soon. 하늘을 봐. 곧 비가 올 거야. **Unit 01 - C**
- I'm going to attend the meeting next week. 나는 다음 주에 회의에 참석할 것이다. **Unit 01 - C**
- She <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ an online game now. 그녀는 지금 온라인 게임을 하고 있다. **Unit 01 - D**
- Nick <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone when I saw him.  
내가 Nick을 보았을 때 그는 통화 중이었다. **Unit 01 - D**
- He <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ his watch yesterday. 그는 어제 자신의 시계를 잃어버렸다. **Unit 02 - A**
- He **has lost** his watch. 그는 자신의 시계를 잃어버렸다. **Unit 02 - A**
- I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ just **eaten** a sandwich. 나는 방금 샌드위치를 먹었다. **Unit 02 - B**
- I've never **eaten** Thai food. 나는 태국 음식을 먹어 본 적이 없다. **Unit 02 - B**
- He **has had** dogs since he was young. 그는 어렸을 때부터 개를 키워 왔다. **Unit 02 - B**
- Julie <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to London. (So she is not here now.)  
Julie는 런던에 갔다. (그래서 그녀는 지금 여기 없다.) **Unit 02 - B**

## Q Answers

- <sup>1</sup> rises <sup>2</sup> bought <sup>3</sup> will[am going to] help <sup>4</sup> going to rain <sup>5</sup> is playing <sup>6</sup> was talking  
<sup>7</sup> lost <sup>8</sup> have <sup>9</sup> has gone



# CHAPTER 03

## 조동사

조동사는 본동사의 기본 의미에  
능력, 허가, 요청, 미래, 의무, 충고 등의  
의미를 더해 준다.

**UNIT 01** can, may, will

**UNIT 02** must, should

**UNIT 03** would like to, had better, used to

## can, may, will

A

## can + 동사원형

- 1 능력: ~할 수 있다 (= be able to + 동사원형)

I **can** speak English, but I **can't** speak French.

= I am **able to** speak English, but I'm **not able to** speak French.

① can이 능력을 의미할 때, 과거는 could 또는 was[were] able to, 미래는 will be able to를 쓴다.

He **could[was able to]** read when he was three years old.

I **will be able to** go to your house tonight.

- 2 허가: ~해도 된다

You **can** eat my chocolate. I don't want to eat it.

- 3 요청: ~해 주시겠습니까?

**Can[Could]** you help me move this chair?

B

## may + 동사원형

- 1 불확실한 추측, 가능성: ~일지도[할지도] 모른다

Kate **may** like me. She always smiles at me.

- 2 허가: ~해도 된다

You **may** use my computer.

C

## will + 동사원형

- 1 예정, 의지: ~할 것이다

I **will** attend the meeting, but he **won't[will not]**.

- 2 요청: ~해 주시겠습니까?

**Will[Would]** you do me a favor?

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Tim can't \_\_\_\_\_ shopping. He doesn't have any money now.

Ⓐ go Ⓑ goes Ⓒ to go

- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ you give me a wake-up call?

Ⓐ Be able to Ⓑ May Ⓒ Will

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.4

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 It is too dark. I (can't, won't) see well.
- 2 You may (play, playing) soccer after lunch.
- 3 I didn't hear you well. (May, Would) you say that again?
- 4 Next week, Mark has a test, so he (will, wills) study this weekend.

STEP  
2

주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 조동사를 쓰시오.

- 1 Brian is able to play the flute very well.  
→ Brian \_\_\_\_\_ play the flute very well.
- 2 Is it okay if I leave early today?  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ I leave early today?
- 3 I was able to speak Japanese well when I was ten.  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ speak Japanese well when I was ten.

STEP  
3

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 Look at the clouds. It may to rain this afternoon.
- 2 Mary will can come to the party tonight.
- 3 Henry is able drive the big bus.
- 4 I will saving money for the trip.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 조동사와 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 네가 원한다면, 이 가방을 가져도 된다. (have)  
→ If you want, you \_\_\_\_\_ this bag.
- 2 다시는 늦지 않겠습니다. (late)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ again.
- 3 Jenny는 그녀의 방에 있을지도 모른다. (be)  
→ Jenny \_\_\_\_\_ in her room.
- 4 나는 7시까지 보고서를 다 마칠 것이다. (finish)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ the report by seven o'clock.
- 5 그는 100m를 11초 안에 달릴 수 있다. (run)  
→ He \_\_\_\_\_ 100 m in eleven seconds.

## A

## must + 동사원형

- 1 의무: ~해야 한다(= have[has] to + 동사원형)

You **must** be back before dinner.

= You **have to** be back before dinner.

- ① must와 have to는 의미가 같지만, 부정형은 전혀 다른 의미를 가진다.

• must not: ~해서는 안 된다 <금지>

I **must not** eat peaches. I am allergic to them.

• don't have to: ~할 필요가 없다(= need not, don't need to)

You **don't have to** answer all the questions.

- ② have to의 과거는 had to, 미래는 will have to를 쓴다.

I **had to** study all night because I have a math test tomorrow. <과거>

You **will have to** learn to spend your money wisely. <미래>

- 2 강한 추측: ~임에 틀림없다

You **must** be Mr. Kim's daughter. You look just like him.

- ① 강한 추측을 의미할 때의 must의 부정은 can't[cannot](~일 리가 없다)이다.

She **can't** be at home now. I just saw her here a few minutes ago.

## B

## should + 동사원형: ~해야 한다, ~하는 것이 좋다 (must보다는 가벼운 의미)

We **should** keep our promise.

You **shouldn't** run in the hall.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 He must \_\_\_\_\_ late tonight. He has a lot of work.

Ⓐ work Ⓑ works Ⓒ to work

- 2 She \_\_\_\_\_ wait for him in the park yesterday.

Ⓐ will have to Ⓑ has to Ⓒ had to

- 3 He sings very well. He \_\_\_\_\_ be a singer.

Ⓐ must Ⓑ shouldn't Ⓒ can't

- 4 You should \_\_\_\_\_ quiet in the library.

Ⓐ are Ⓑ be Ⓒ to be

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.4

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 You should (turn, to turn) off your cell phone in the theater.
- 2 Jessica looks sad. She (must, should) have a problem.
- 3 You have a lot of time. You (must not, don't have to) hurry.
- 4 James (cannot, must not) be here. He went to Berlin yesterday.
- 5 Look at that No Parking sign. You (must not, don't have to) park here.

STEP  
2

밀줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 We must to follow the rules.
- 2 He should change not the plan.
- 3 He has to come to the meeting yesterday.
- 4 You have not to worry about the problem.

STEP  
3

주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 조동사를 보기에서 골라 쓰시오.

보기                    can't                    must                    should

- 1 It will be good for you to call her right now.  
→ You \_\_\_\_\_ call her right now.
- 2 It is impossible that he is the robber.  
→ He \_\_\_\_\_ be the robber.
- 3 Andy has to finish his work before he leaves.  
→ Andy \_\_\_\_\_ finish his work before he leaves.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 수업 시간에 자서는 안 된다. (should, sleep)  
→ You \_\_\_\_\_ during class.
- 2 문이 열려 있다. 누군가 방 안에 있는 것이 틀림없다. (be)  
→ The door is open. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ in the room.
- 3 병원 안에서는 절대 담배를 피우면 안 된다. (must, smoke)  
→ You \_\_\_\_\_ in the hospital.
- 4 우리는 부산에서 지하철을 타야할 것이다. (take)  
→ We \_\_\_\_\_ the subway in Busan.

# would like to, had better, used to

A

would like to + 동사원형: ~하고 싶다

I **would like to** go to the amusement park.

= I'd like to go to the amusement park.

Would you **like to** try this tea?

B

had better + 동사원형: ~하는 것이 낫다(충고, 경고)

You **had better** think about it again.

= You'd better think about it again.

① had better의 부정은 「had better not」의 형태로 쓴다.

You **had better not** smoke. It is not good for your health.

C

used to + 동사원형

1 과거의 습관: ~하곤 했다(= would)

Junho **used to** play football on Sunday mornings.

= Junho **would** play football on Sunday mornings.

2 과거의 상태: ~이었다

There **used to** be a big tree here.

① 과거의 상태를 나타낼 때는 would를 쓸 수 없다.

~~There would be a big tree here.~~

② used to의 부정은 「didn't use to[used not to]」, 의문문은 「Did + 주어 + use to ~?」로 쓴다.

She **didn't use to** like babies, but now she does.

Did you **use to** work in a bank?

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 Julie \_\_\_\_\_ learn Latin dance.

- Ⓐ would like Ⓑ would likes to Ⓒ would like to

2 You are late. You \_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi.

- Ⓐ have better Ⓑ had better Ⓒ had better to

3 You \_\_\_\_\_ go to the park alone after midnight.

- Ⓐ not had better Ⓑ had not better Ⓒ had better not

4 I used to \_\_\_\_\_ to classical music.

- Ⓐ listen Ⓑ listening Ⓒ listened

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.5

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Mom, I would like (have, to have) a parrot.
- 2 You (have better, had better) leave now.
- 3 There (would, used to) be a café at the end of this street.
- 4 You (had not better, had better not) set up your tent here.

STEP  
2

빈칸에 가장 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기      would like to      had better      would

- 1 You look very tired. You \_\_\_\_\_ take a break.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ change my order. I'll have a hamburger.
- 3 When I was young, my grandmother \_\_\_\_\_ tell me old stories.

STEP  
3

주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 조동사를 쓰시오.

- 1 I think you should not eat junk food.  
→ You \_\_\_\_\_ eat junk food.
- 2 I want to go to the concert with you.  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the concert with you.
- 3 I went hiking every weekend, but I don't anymore.  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ go hiking every weekend.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 조동사와 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 우리는 새해 첫날에 파티를 하곤 했다. (have)  
→ We \_\_\_\_\_ a party on New Year's Day.
- 2 나는 다시 그녀를 만나고 싶다. (see)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ her again.
- 3 너는 다른 일자리를 찾아보는 것이 좋겠다. (look for)  
→ You \_\_\_\_\_ another job.
- 4 예전에는 여기에 병원이 있었다. (be, hospital)  
→ There \_\_\_\_\_ here.
- 5 나와 함께 산책 갈래? (go)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk with me?



# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 조동사와 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그녀는 러시아어를 말할 수 없다. (speak)  
→ She \_\_\_\_\_ Russian.
- 2 크리스마스에 눈이 올지도 모른다. (snow)  
→ It \_\_\_\_\_ on Christmas Day.
- 3 당신을 저녁 식사에 초대하고 싶습니다. (would, invite)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ you for dinner.
- 4 우리 가족은 휴가에 제주도를 가곤 했다. (visit)  
→ My family \_\_\_\_\_ Jeju Island on vacation.
- 5 Robert는 나에게 화가 난 게 틀림없다. (angry)  
→ Robert \_\_\_\_\_ with me.
- 6 너는 너무 늦게까지 공부하지 않는 것이 낫다. (study)  
→ You \_\_\_\_\_ too late into the night.
- 7 나는 지난 일요일에 일하러 가야만 했다. (have to, go)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ to work last Sunday.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 Sara는 뉴욕에서 그를 만날 수 있을 것이다. (meet, will, to, be, him, able)  
→ Sara \_\_\_\_\_ in New York.
- 2 아빠는 디저트를 드시지 않았지만, 지금은 드신다. (dessert, to, eat, use, didn't)  
→ Dad \_\_\_\_\_, but now he does.
- 3 히터 좀 켜줄래? (the, can, you, heater, turn on)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 4 너는 그의 충고를 받아들일 필요가 없다. (have, you, don't, take, advice, his, to)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 5 너는 나에게 거짓말해서는 안 된다. (lie, you, to, me, not, should)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 6 그는 내일 너를 만나지 않을지도 몰라. 감기에 걸렸거든. (meet, he, may, not, you)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow. He has a cold.

## C

보기의 조동사와 ( ) 안에 주어진 말을 이용하여 대화를 완성하시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기	had better	will	would like to	can't	used to
----	------------	------	---------------	-------	---------

- 1 A: What time will the concert start?

B: The concert \_\_\_\_\_ at 6:00 p.m. (start)

- 2 A: I couldn't sleep last night.

B: You \_\_\_\_\_ coffee after dinner. (not, drink)

- 3 A: Do you play online games?

B: No. I \_\_\_\_\_ them, but I don't anymore. (play)

- 4 A: May I take your order?

B: Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich. (have)

- 5 A: Are Fred and Kevin twins?

B: Well, they \_\_\_\_\_ twins. They are not the same age. (be)

## D

그림을 보고 보기의 조동사와 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 기차 이용 예절에 관한 문장을 완성하시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)



보기	have to	must	may
----	---------	------	-----

If you are on the train ...

- 1 You \_\_\_\_\_. (not, smoke)

- 2 You \_\_\_\_\_. (speak quietly)

- 3 You \_\_\_\_\_ at your seat. (eat or drink)

# REVIEW TEST

[1-3] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 You \_\_\_\_\_ study now. You have an important exam tomorrow.

- ① can't
- ② may not
- ③ must not
- ④ have to
- ⑤ used to

2 I \_\_\_\_\_ swim in the morning. I don't anymore.

- ① can
- ② will
- ③ should
- ④ used to
- ⑤ had better

3 A: I have a headache.

B: You \_\_\_\_\_ take some medicine.

- ① may not
- ② should
- ③ need not
- ④ used to
- ⑤ would like to

[5-6] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

5 ① Sam may win first prize.

- ② He will can attend the party.
- ③ I won't visit him tomorrow.
- ④ You must not take pictures here.
- ⑤ She has to fix her computer today.

6 ① He has better tell the truth.

- ② I would like to go on a trip.
- ③ The girl must be her cousin.
- ④ I used to sleep until noon on Sundays.
- ⑤ John has to wait for his mother.

## 빈출

[7-8] 다음 밑줄 친 부분과 바꿔 쓸 수 있는 것을 고르시오.

7 You don't have to worry about it.

- ① cannot
- ② may not
- ③ must not
- ④ need not
- ⑤ should not

4 다음 중 보기의 밑줄 친 부분과 의미가 같은 것은?

보기 Anyone may use my laptop.

- ① Jen may be late for the train.
- ② The rumor may be true.
- ③ You may go to the concert.
- ④ She may not like my present.
- ⑤ He may be at the school library now.

8 You must come to class on time.

- ① may
- ② will
- ③ have to
- ④ used to
- ⑤ would like to

**9** 다음 중 우리말을 영어로 잘못 옮긴 것은?

- ① 벤치에 앉아도 될까요?  
→ May I sit on the bench?
- ② 그는 세계 여행을 하고 싶어 한다.  
→ He would like to travel the world.
- ③ 너는 규칙적으로 운동을 해야 한다.  
→ You should exercise regularly.
- ④ 그 가방은 Jenny의 것임에 틀림없다.  
→ The bag has to be Jenny's.
- ⑤ 그는 한때 영어 선생님이었다.  
→ He used to be an English teacher.

**10** 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분을 잘못 고친 것은?

- ① You had not better go out today.  
→ had better not
- ② I would like have a salad.  
→ having
- ③ You will must call him first.  
→ will have to
- ④ He is able to not swim well.  
→ is not able to
- ⑤ I used going to school on foot.  
→ to go

**11** 빈칸에 들어갈 말로 알맞지 않은 것은?

\_\_\_\_\_ you recommend a book  
for me?

- ① May
- ② Can
- ③ Could
- ④ Will
- ⑤ Would

**서술형**

**12** 대화가 성립되도록 ( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 골라 쓰시오.

A: Excuse me, ① (may, will) I ask you a question?

B: Sorry. I am very busy. I ② (can, must) go now.

① \_\_\_\_\_ ② \_\_\_\_\_

**13** 다음 중 두 문장의 의미가 같지 않은 것은?

- ① May I ask you a question?  
→ Can I ask you a question?
- ② I can pick you up tonight.  
→ I am able to pick you up tonight.
- ③ You must go home before dark.  
→ You have to go home before dark.
- ④ He must be a liar.  
→ He may be a liar.
- ⑤ You don't need to wait for me.  
→ You don't have to wait for me.

**서술형**

[14-15] 빈칸에 공통으로 들어갈 말을 쓰시오.

- 14** • You \_\_\_\_\_ better call him now.  
• I \_\_\_\_\_ to get up early yesterday.

- 15** • Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ join our bowling club?  
• He used \_\_\_\_\_ live in Mexico.

**빈출**

[16-17] 밑줄 친 부분의 의미가 나머지 넷과 다른 것을 고르시오.

- 16** ① He can't drive a truck.  
② Ron can't read Chinese.  
③ John can't play the guitar.  
④ She can't be Tom's sister.  
⑤ I can't remember the password.

- 17** ① You must finish the work today.  
② I must find another job.  
③ She must get up early tomorrow.  
④ She must be angry at me.  
⑤ You must be careful with the knife.

**22** Cindy is not able to play the drums.

→ Cindy \_\_\_\_\_ the drums.

**서술형**

[18~19] 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 18** 예전에는 우리 학교 근처에 공원이 있었다.

→ There \_\_\_\_\_  
a park near my school.

**서술형**

[23~25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바로  
게 배열하시오.

- 23** 그는 오늘 일하러 갈 필요가 없다.

(to, work, doesn't, he, to, go, have)

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
today.

- 19** Mike는 거기에 가길 원하지 않을지도 모른다.

→ Mike \_\_\_\_\_  
to go there.

- 24** 나는 새 스마트폰을 사고 싶다.

(buy, a, new, I, like, smartphone, to, would)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

- 20** 다음 중 not이 들어갈 위치로 적절한 것은?

You ① had ② better ③ go ④ @ hiking ⑤ today.

- ① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥

- 25** 저에게 이 책을 빌려주시겠어요?

(me, you, this, lend, would, book)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**서술형**

[21~22] 주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을  
쓰시오.

- 21** You can use my car if you need to.

→ You \_\_\_\_\_ my car if you  
need to.

**고난도**

- 26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① You had better go to the hospital first.
- ② Peter will can pick you up tomorrow.
- ③ Mom used to read me a bedtime story.
- ④ Adam may to meet his friend tonight.
- ⑤ There would be old houses in the countryside.

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. You had better wearing a coat.  
 b. I would like to talk to Mr. Green.  
 c. The city used to be very crowded.  
 d. He may being right about the matter.  
 e. I was able to arrive at work on time.

- ① a, b, c      ② a, c, d  
 ③ a, d, e      ④ b, c, e  
 ⑤ b, d, e

**30** There used to being a big stadium near my school.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

고난도

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- You don't have to prepare dinner for us.
- He is able to not play tennis well.
- I must save a lot of money for a new computer.
- Did you use go skiing?
- I have to study hard for the exam.

- ① 1개      ② 2개      ③ 3개  
 ④ 4개      ⑤ 5개

서술형 고난도

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** Mia uses to live with me, but she moved to another city. If she moves back, I would like live with her again. (2개)

서술형

[29-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** We should talk not on the phone during the show.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**33** My parents want me to do a few things before I play computer games. First, I should helped my brother with his homework. Also, I had to feed my dog. After that, I can play them. (2개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- I **can** speak English, but I **can't** speak French. 나는 영어는 할 수 있지만 프랑스어는 못한다. **Unit 01 - A**
- You <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ eat my chocolate. 너는 내 초콜릿을 먹어도 된다. **Unit 01 - A**
- **Can[Could]** you help me move this chair? 제가 이 의자를 옮기는 것을 도와주시겠습니까? **Unit 01 - A**
- Kate <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ like me. She always smiles at me.  
Kate는 나를 좋아할지도 모른다. 그녀는 언제나 나에게 웃어준다. **Unit 01 - B**
- You **may** use my computer. 너는 내 컴퓨터를 써도 된다. **Unit 01 - B**
- I **will** attend the meeting, but he **won't**.  
나는 회의에 참석할 것이지만, 그는 그러지 않을 것이다. **Unit 01 - C**
- **Will[Would]** you do me a favor? 부탁 하나 들어주시겠습니까? **Unit 01 - C**
- You **must** be back before dinner. 너는 저녁 식사 전에 돌아와야 한다. **Unit 02 - A**
- You <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ be Mr. Kim's daughter. You look just like him.  
너는 Kim 씨의 딸임에 틀림없다. 너는 그와 똑 닮았다. **Unit 02 - A**
- We **should** keep our promise. 우리는 약속을 지켜야 한다. **Unit 02 - B**
- You <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ run in the hall. 너는 복도에서 뛰면 안 된다. **Unit 02 - B**
- I **would like to** go to the amusement park. 나는 놀이공원에 가고 싶다. **Unit 03 - A**
- <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you **like to** try this tea? 이 차를 마셔 보시겠습니까? **Unit 03 - A**
- You <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ think about it again. 너는 그것에 대해 다시 생각해 보는 게 좋겠다. **Unit 03 - B**
- Junho <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ play football on Sunday mornings.  
준호는 일요일 아침마다 축구를 하곤 했다. **Unit 03 - C**
- There <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ be a big tree here. 여기에 큰 나무가 있었다. **Unit 03 - C**

## Answers

- <sup>1</sup> can[may]   <sup>2</sup> may   <sup>3</sup> must   <sup>4</sup> shouldn't[should not] / must not   <sup>5</sup> Would   <sup>6</sup> had better  
<sup>7</sup> used to / would   <sup>8</sup> used to

ESSENTIAL RULES OF  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

# CHAPTER 04

## to부정사

to부정사는 「to + 동사원형」 형태로 문장에서  
명사, 형용사 혹은 부사의 역할을 한다.

**UNIT 01** 명사적 용법의 to부정사

**UNIT 02** 형용사적 용법의 to부정사

**UNIT 03** 부사적 용법의 to부정사

**UNIT 04** to부정사의 의미상의 주어,  
too ~ to-v, enough to-v

# 명사적 용법의 to부정사

to부정사(구)는 명사처럼 문장에서 주어, 보어, 목적어의 역할을 할 수 있다.

A

## 주어 역할을 하는 to부정사

주어로 쓰인 to부정사가 길어질 경우 보통 「it(가주어) ~ to-v(진주어)」 형태로 쓴다.

**To keep** a pet in an apartment is not easy.

→ **It** is not easy **to keep** a pet in an apartment.

B

## 보어 역할을 하는 to부정사

My plan was **to prepare** dinner by six o'clock.

C

## 목적어 역할을 하는 to부정사

Jake likes **to bake** bread and cookies. He wants **to be** a baker.

① to부정사의 부정형: 「not[never] to-v」

James decided **not to give up**. He will try again.

D

## 의문사 + to-v

문장에서 주어, 보어, 목적어의 역할을 하며, 의문사에 따라 그 의미가 달라진다. 「의문사 + to-v」는 「의문사 + 주어 + should + 동사원형」으로 바꿔 쓸 수 있다.

- what to-v: 무엇을 ~할지
- who(m) to-v: 누구를[누구에게] ~할지
- where to-v: 어디서[어디로] ~할지
- how to-v: 어떻게 ~할지
- when to-v: 언제 ~할지

I've finished the work. Please tell me **what to do** next.

= what I should do

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ is important to follow the school rules.  
 Ⓐ It Ⓑ That Ⓒ This
- 2 He wants \_\_\_\_\_ new sneakers.  
 Ⓐ buy Ⓑ buying Ⓒ to buy
- 3 Tell me when \_\_\_\_\_ the room.  
 Ⓐ leave Ⓑ leaving Ⓒ to leave

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.6

## STEP 1

다음 문장을 가주어로 시작하는 문장으로 바꿔 쓰시오.

- 1 To watch American dramas is interesting.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ is interesting \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 To travel around the world takes a long time.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ takes a long time \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 To run 100 m in seven seconds is not possible.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ is not possible \_\_\_\_\_.

## STEP 2

두 문장의 의미가 같도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 I'm not sure what I should say to you.

→ I'm not sure \_\_\_\_\_ to you.

- 2 I haven't decided where I should stay in Paris yet.

→ I haven't decided \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris yet.

- 3 There are lots of doctors. I don't know whom I should see.

→ There are lots of doctors. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.

## STEP 3

빈칸에 가장 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 to-v 형태로 바꿔 쓰시오.

보기

teach students

buy a watch

draw pictures

memorize thirty English words a day

- 1 Natalie is a teacher. Her job is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 Tim draws pictures every day. His hobby is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 I want to improve my English. My plan is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 I need \_\_\_\_\_. I lost my old one yesterday.

## STEP 4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 나는 어렸을 때 강아지를 갖고 싶어 했다. (want, have)

→ I \_\_\_\_\_ a puppy when I was a child.

- 2 어떻게 젓가락질을 하는지 제게 보여주세요. (use)

→ Please show me \_\_\_\_\_ chopsticks.

- 3 정크 푸드를 먹는 것은 건강에 좋지 않다. (eat)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ isn't good for your health \_\_\_\_\_ junk food.

# 형용사적 용법의 to부정사

to부정사(구)는 명사를 수식하거나 「be to-v」 형태로 주어를 설명하는 형용사 역할을 할 수 있다.

## A

## 명사를 수식하는 to부정사

I have a project **to finish** by next week.

① -thing, -one, -body 등으로 끝나는 대명사 뒤에 수식하는 형용사가 있을 때, to부정사는 형용사 뒤에 온다.

Do you have anything important **to say**?

② 수식 받는 명사가 to부정사 속의 동사에 이어지는 전치사의 목적어일 때, 전치사는 반드시 써야 된다.

He needs a toy **to play with**. (→ play with a toy)

He needs a toy **to play**.

→ 위 문장에서 play는 자동사이므로 목적어를 취하려면 반드시 전치사가 필요하다.

## B

## 주어를 설명하는 「be to-v」 용법

1 예정: ~할 예정이다

She **is to quit** her job next year.

2 가능: ~할 수 있다

No one **was to be seen** in the shop.

3 의무: ~해야 한다

You **are to keep** your promise.

4 운명: ~할 운명이다

He **was never to visit** his hometown again.

5 의도: ~하려고 하다

If you **are to speak** English well, you must practice hard.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 I need someone \_\_\_\_\_ me.

- Ⓐ help Ⓑ helping Ⓒ to help

2 He brought up an important topic \_\_\_\_\_.

- Ⓐ talk Ⓑ to talk Ⓒ to talk about

3 Mom \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport at five.

- Ⓐ is arrive Ⓑ is to arrive Ⓒ is to arriving

**PLUS :** 「be to-v」 용법 vs. 명사적 용법의 보어 역할을 하는 to부정사

• She **is to go** to New York next week.

〈「be to-v 용법」(예정)〉

• Her plan **is to go** to New York next month. 〈명사적 용법(보어)〉

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.6

STEP  
1

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 to-v 형태로 바꿔 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기 finish love eat

- 1 I couldn't find anything \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I don't have enough time \_\_\_\_\_ the work.
- 3 I feel lonely. I need someone \_\_\_\_\_ me.

STEP  
2

빈칸에 알맞은 전치사를 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기 in with to

- 1 I gave him a pen to write \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 He didn't have anyone to talk \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Now he is looking for a house to live \_\_\_\_\_.

STEP  
3

두 문장의 의미가 같도록 be동사를 이용하여 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 Andy is going to visit Europe next week.  
→ Andy \_\_\_\_\_ Europe next week.
- 2 You have to return the books by tomorrow.  
→ You \_\_\_\_\_ the books by tomorrow.
- 3 The old man was destined to see his family again.  
→ The old man \_\_\_\_\_ his family again.
- 4 If you intend to stay, you will need a visa.  
→ If you \_\_\_\_\_, you will need a visa.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 나는 10시까지 집에 있어야만 한다. (be, home)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ by ten o'clock.
- 2 냉장고에 차가운 마실 것이 아무 것도 없다. (nothing, drink)  
→ There is \_\_\_\_\_ in the refrigerator.
- 3 운전할 때 따라야 할 많은 교통 법규가 있다. (traffic rules, follow)  
→ There are \_\_\_\_\_ when you drive.

# 부사적 용법의 to부정사

to부정사(구)는 동사, 형용사, 부사를 수식하는 부사의 역할을 할 수 있다.

A

**목적을 나타내는 to부정사:** ~하기 위해서

I bought this toy to make my daughter happy.  
 = in order to make  
 = so as to make

B

**결과를 나타내는 to부정사:** (~해서) ~하다

The boy grew up to become a fashion designer.

① 「only to-v」는 「(~했지만) 결국 ~하다」라는 부정적인 결과를 나타낸다.  
 They played hard, **only to lose** the game.

C

**감정의 원인을 나타내는 to부정사:** ~해서, ~하여

I am so happy to be back home safely.

D

**조건을 나타내는 to부정사:** ~라면, ~한다면

**To see** him paint, you wouldn't believe he was just three.

E

**형용사를 수식하는 to부정사:** ~하기에

The lesson is difficult to understand.



F

**판단의 근거를 나타내는 to부정사:** ~하다니

She must be smart **to solve** the problem.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I was not happy, but I smiled \_\_\_\_\_ happy.  
 Ⓐ look Ⓑ looked Ⓒ to look
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ her dance, you would think she was a professional.  
 Ⓐ See Ⓑ To see Ⓒ To seeing
- 3 They must be close friends \_\_\_\_\_ together every day.  
 Ⓐ play Ⓑ playing Ⓒ to play

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.6

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 The novel is difficult (understands, to understand).
- 2 I am happy (know, to know) a nice person like you.
- 3 I read many books (learn, to learn) a lot of facts.
- 4 He must be very busy (work, to work) so late every day.

STEP  
2

빈칸에 가장 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 to-v 형태로 바꿔 쓰시오.

보기	see you in New York	take a walk
	be a famous poet	not be late for class

- 1 I got up early \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 She grew up \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I was surprised \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Kate and Tom went to the park \_\_\_\_\_.

STEP  
3

밑줄 친 부분에 유의하여 문장을 우리말로 해석하시오.

- 1 I'll go on a diet to be healthy.
- 2 The old man lived to be one hundred years old.
- 3 I went to the store to buy a new winter jacket.
- 4 She must be foolish to make the same mistake.
- 5 To hear him sing, you would think him a singer.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 나는 그녀의 죽음에 대해 듣고 충격을 받았다. (hear about, death)  
→ I was shocked \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 일본어는 배우기 쉽다. (easy, learn)  
→ Japanese \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 그는 자라서 위대한 작가가 되었다. (be, great writer)  
→ He grew up \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 나는 나의 고양이를 찾으러 밖으로 나갔다. (look for, cat)  
→ I went out \_\_\_\_\_.

# to부정사의 의미상의 주어, too ~ to-v, enough to-v

## A

## to부정사의 의미상의 주어

to부정사의 행위의 주체가 문장의 주어와 일치하지 않을 때, to부정사 앞에 의미상의 주어를 쓴다.

- 1 for + 목적격: to부정사의 의미상의 주어는 보통 「for + 목적격」 형태로 나타낸다.

The question was difficult **for me** to answer.

- 2 of + 목적격: 앞의 형용사가 사람의 성격이나 성질을 나타낼 때( kind, nice, polite, wise, foolish, silly, generous, careless 등) to부정사의 의미상의 주어는 「of + 목적격」 형태로 나타낸다.

It is very *nice* **of you** to remember my birthday.

## B

## to부정사를 이용한 구문

- 1 too + 형용사/부사 + to-v: 너무 ~하여 …할 수 없다

(= so + 형용사/부사 + that + 주어 + can't + 동사원형)

Ron was **too full to eat** the dessert.

→ Ron was **so full that he couldn't eat** the dessert.

These sneakers are **too expensive for me to buy**.

→ These sneakers are **so expensive that I can't buy** them.

- 2 형용사/부사 + enough + to-v: ~할 만큼 충분히 …하다

(= so + 형용사/부사 + that + 주어 + can + 동사원형)

The hall is **large enough to fit** a hundred people.

→ The hall is **so large that it can fit** a hundred people.

The game is **easy enough for children to enjoy**.

→ The game is **so easy that children can enjoy** it.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 It took a long time \_\_\_\_\_ to read the essay.

Ⓐ me Ⓑ for me Ⓒ of me

- 2 It was kind \_\_\_\_\_ to give up his seat.

Ⓐ him Ⓑ for him Ⓒ of him

- 3 Adrian is \_\_\_\_\_ shy to speak in public.

Ⓐ so Ⓑ too Ⓒ enough

- 4 This painting is cheap \_\_\_\_\_ for me to buy.

Ⓐ so Ⓑ too Ⓒ enough

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.6

STEP  
1

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 It was careless for you to lose my book.
- 2 Her feet are enough small to wear these shoes.
- 3 The juice is so sour for the baby to drink.
- 4 It is impossible of her to climb Mt. Everest.

STEP  
2

빈칸에 for와 of 중 알맞은 전치사를 넣어 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 It is hard \_\_\_\_\_ him to work overtime every day.
- 2 It was very polite \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Lee to say sorry.
- 3 It seems surprising \_\_\_\_\_ her to marry him.
- 4 It is generous \_\_\_\_\_ you to forgive her.

STEP  
3

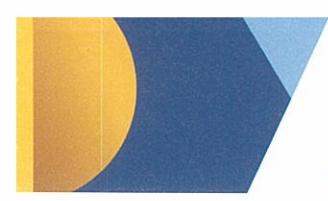
두 문장의 의미가 같도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 Mia is so rich that she can buy the island.  
→ Mia is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 This bag is so small that I can't put all my books in it.  
→ This bag is \_\_\_\_\_ in.
- 3 The English book is easy enough for her to read.  
→ The English book is \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 4 The boy is too big to pass through this hole.  
→ The boy is \_\_\_\_\_.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그는 너무나 게을러서 그 일을 제시간에 마칠 수 없다. (lazy, finish)  
→ He is \_\_\_\_\_ the work on time.
- 2 네가 거짓말을 했다니 어리석었구나! (silly, tell)  
→ It was \_\_\_\_\_ a lie!
- 3 요리를 하는 것은 내게 있어 흥미진진하다. (exciting, cook)  
→ It is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 그는 부모님을 이해할 수 있을 정도로 충분히 나이가 들었다. (old, understand)  
→ He is \_\_\_\_\_ his parents.



# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 Justin은 장래에 가수가 되고 싶어 한다. (want, be, singer)

→ Justin \_\_\_\_\_ in the future.

- 2 우리는 눈을 보호하기 위해 선글라스를 썼다. (wear, sunglasses, protect)

→ We \_\_\_\_\_ our eyes.

- 3 새로운 사람들을 만나는 것은 재미있다. (meet, new, people)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ is fun \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 그 새로운 시스템은 사용하기 쉽다. (easy, use)

→ The new system \_\_\_\_\_.

- 5 그 키 큰 소녀는 자라서 슈퍼 모델이 되었다. (grow up, be, supermodel)

→ The tall girl \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 Jake의 말을 믿다니 너는 어리석다. 그는 거짓말쟁이다. (believe, Jake's words)

→ You are foolish \_\_\_\_\_. He is a liar.

- 7 Vanessa는 너무 바빠서 나와 점심을 먹을 수가 없었다. (busy, have lunch)

→ Vanessa was \_\_\_\_\_ with me.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 Lucy는 혼자서 결정을 내릴 수 있을 만큼 나이가 들었다. (to, make, a, enough, old, decision)

→ Lucy is \_\_\_\_\_ by herself.

- 2 저는 추워요. 제게 따뜻한 마실 것을 주세요. (something, hot, me, drink, to, give)

→ I'm cold. \_\_\_\_\_, please.

- 3 Brian은 항상 바쁘다. 나는 언제 그에게 전화를 해야 할지 모르겠다. (call, I, when, don't, to, know, him)

→ Brian is always busy. \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 우리는 앉을 벤치를 찾고 있다. (sit, are, bench, for, a, looking, on, to)

→ We \_\_\_\_\_.

- 5 Hannah는 음식을 좋아한다. 덜 먹는 것은 그녀에게 매우 힘든 일이다.

(for, it, very, hard, eat less, is, her, to)

→ Hannah likes food. \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 나는 9시까지 역에 도착해야 한다. (arrive, I, at, to, the station, am)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ by nine o'clock.

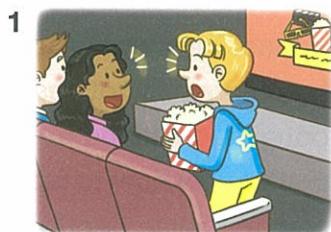
## C

주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 to부정사를 이용하여 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 I will go to Australia. I will learn English there.  
→ I will go to Australia \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Fred needs to buy a new car. He doesn't have enough money.  
→ Fred is not rich \_\_\_\_\_ a new car.
- 3 She collects pictures of famous buildings. It is her hobby.  
→ Her hobby is \_\_\_\_\_ of famous buildings.
- 4 He studied very hard, but he failed the exam.  
→ He studied very hard only \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 He didn't remember her name, so he was sorry.  
→ He was sorry \_\_\_\_\_ her name.
- 6 I feel hot and thirsty. I want to drink something cold.  
→ I want something \_\_\_\_\_.

## D

그림을 보고 to부정사와 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.



- 1 Anthony was \_\_\_\_\_ his teacher at the theater.  
(surprised, meet)
- 2 Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_ Palace Hotel? (get to)
- 3 The boy is \_\_\_\_\_ the roller coaster. (too, short, ride)

# REVIEW TEST

[1-5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 It is interesting \_\_\_\_\_ a new language.

- ① learn
- ② learned
- ③ be learning
- ④ to learn
- ⑤ to learning

2 I need someone \_\_\_\_\_.

- ① talk
- ② talk to
- ③ talking to
- ④ to talk
- ⑤ to talk to

3 She was \_\_\_\_\_ to go to school.

- ① to sick
- ② so sick
- ③ too sick
- ④ enough sick
- ⑤ sick enough

4 She awoke \_\_\_\_\_ herself famous.

- ① find
- ② found
- ③ to find
- ④ finding
- ⑤ to finding

5 It is rude \_\_\_\_\_ not to apologize.

- ① he
- ② him
- ③ his
- ④ to him
- ⑤ of him

빈출

6 막줄 친 부분의 쓰임이 나머지 넷과 다른 것은?

- ① I bought a pen to write with.
- ② We want something to eat.
- ③ He always has a lot of work to do.
- ④ She went there to find her brother.
- ⑤ I don't have time to read the book.

[7-8] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

- 7 ① His dream is to be a lawyer.  
② He found a nice house to live.  
③ It is very wise of him to tell the truth.  
④ I don't have enough money to buy the shoes.  
⑤ You are to be quiet in the library.

- 8 ① He must be angry to say so.  
② The program is not easy to use.  
③ I bought something to wear nice.  
④ I don't know how to read Russian.  
⑤ I plan to stay in Seoul for a week.

9 빈칸에 들어갈 말로 알맞은 것은? (2개)

It is \_\_\_\_\_ of her to forgive him.

- ① kind
- ② easy
- ③ polite
- ④ difficult
- ⑤ hard

- 10** 우리말과 일치하도록 할 때, 빈칸에 들어갈 말로 알맞은 것은?

내 목표는 수학 시험에서 100점을 맞는 것이다.  
→ My goal is \_\_\_\_\_ on the math test.

- ① get one hundred points
- ② got one hundred points
- ③ to get one hundred points
- ④ to getting one hundred points
- ⑤ not to get one hundred points

- 11** 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분을 바르게 고친 것은?

- ① Arabic is so difficult to write.  
→ enough difficult
- ② I'm so sad hear about his death.  
→ hearing
- ③ It is careless to you to break the glass.  
→ for you
- ④ He has two sons to take care.  
→ to take care of
- ⑤ I had something tell him.  
→ to told

## 서술형

[14-16] 두 문장의 의미가 같도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 14** The work was so complicated that he couldn't do it.

→ The work was \_\_\_\_\_.

- 15** The hotel is so large that it can hold 3,000 people at once.

→ The hotel is \_\_\_\_\_ 3,000 people at once.

- 16** My boss didn't tell me what I should do.

→ My boss didn't tell me \_\_\_\_\_.

## 서술형

[12-13] ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 12** We were very upset \_\_\_\_\_ the news. (hear)

- 13** Tell me when \_\_\_\_\_ the national museum. (visit)

- 17** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것은?

- ① He has a lot of books reading.
- ② I went to the library to found the book.
- ③ I like to visiting my friends' blogs.
- ④ It is not easy to save money regularly.
- ⑤ My dream is live in a beautiful island.

**18** 다음 중 보기의 밑줄 친 부분과 쓰임이 같은 것은?

**보기** I visited France to see the Eiffel Tower.

- ① She decided not to go there.
- ② He quit his job to study more.
- ③ They bought something to eat.
- ④ My plan is to pass the exam.
- ⑤ I don't want to see her again.

**19** 빈칸에 들어갈 말이 나머지 넷과 다른 것은?

- ① It was easy \_\_\_\_\_ us to find your house.
- ② It was dangerous \_\_\_\_\_ her to follow him.
- ③ It is fun \_\_\_\_\_ me to learn English.
- ④ It was hard \_\_\_\_\_ me to solve the problem.
- ⑤ It is very nice \_\_\_\_\_ you to call me first.

**빈출**

**22** 다음 중 두 문장의 의미가 같지 않은 것은?

- ① To be a teacher is not easy.  
→ It is not easy to be a teacher.
- ② She told me what to buy.  
→ She told me what I should buy.
- ③ The work is too hard for us to do.  
→ The work is so hard that we can do it.
- ④ I came here to visit him.  
→ I came here in order to visit him.
- ⑤ She is to go to church tomorrow.  
→ She will go to church tomorrow.

**서술형**

[23~24] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

**23** 그 상자는 이 모든 옷을 넣을 만큼 충분히 크다.  
(clothes, enough, all, these, to, big, fit, of)

→ The box is \_\_\_\_\_.

**서술형**

[20~21] 우리말과 일치하도록 to부정사와 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**20** 그녀는 빠르게 뛰었지만 결국 그 기차를 놓치고 말았다.  
(miss, train)

→ She ran quickly \_\_\_\_\_.

**24** 나는 적을 만한 종이가 없었다.  
(write, on, any, paper, to)

→ I didn't have \_\_\_\_\_.

**21** 그가 피아노 연주하는 것을 듣는다면, 너는 그가 피아니스트라고 생각할 것이다. (hear, play)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, you would think he was a pianist.

**25** 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열할 때 네 번째에 오는 단어는?

to, is, for, make, friends, important,  
teenagers, it

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| ① to        | ② for       |
| ③ make      | ④ important |
| ⑤ teenagers |             |

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① I cleaned the house to help my mom.
- ② I was disappointed losing the game.
- ③ Do you have a book to read?
- ④ It is good of children to do outdoor activities.
- ⑤ These days, I don't have a close friend to talk to.

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. Jane grew up to be a movie director.
- b. He is so weak to carry the desk.
- c. It was foolish of you to believe the rumor.
- d. It was not nice for you to say that.
- e. You must be very sensitive to hear the sound.

- ① a, b, c
- ② a, c, e
- ③ b, c, d
- ④ b, c, e
- ⑤ b, d, e

**고난도**

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- She is to be a mother next month.
- I didn't study enough hard to pass the exam.
- My sister went to America to meet her friend.
- I'm looking for someone to take care of my dog.
- It is very generous for you to share your knowledge with us.

- ① 1개
- ② 2개
- ③ 3개
- ④ 4개
- ⑤ 5개

**서술형**

[29-30] 맥줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** My dream is to help people in need.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**30** It is very kind for you to invite me.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**서술형**

**31** 우리말과 일치하도록 주어진 조건에 맞게 문장을 완성하시오.

그 노래는 부르기 어렵다.

〈조건〉 1. difficult, sing을 이용할 것  
2. The song을 주어로 할 것

→ \_\_\_\_\_

**서술형** **고난도**

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** I can't go out with you tonight. I am to finishing the report by tomorrow. (1개)

**33** On my mother's birthday, I wanted to do something for her. But I didn't have enough money buying a present. So, I decided write a letter. (2개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ is not easy **to keep** a pet in an apartment.

아파트에서 반려동물을 기르는 것은 쉽지 않다. Unit 01 - A

- My plan was 2 \_\_\_\_\_ dinner by six o'clock.

내 계획은 6시까지 저녁을 준비하는 것이었다. Unit 01 - B

- Jake likes **to bake** bread and cookies. Jake는 빵과 쿠키를 굽는 것을 좋아한다. Unit 01 - C

- I've finished the work. Please tell me 3 \_\_\_\_\_ next.

저는 일을 끝마쳤습니다. 다음에 제가 무엇을 해야 할지 말씀해 주세요. Unit 01 - D

- I have a project 4 \_\_\_\_\_ by next week. 나는 다음 주까지 마쳐야 할 프로젝트가 있다. Unit 02 - A

- You are 5 \_\_\_\_\_ your promise. 너는 너의 약속을 지켜야 한다. Unit 02 - B

- I bought this toy **to make** my daughter happy. 나는 내 딸을 행복하게 하기 위해 이 장난감을 샀다. Unit 03 - A

- The boy grew up 6 \_\_\_\_\_ a fashion designer.

그 소년은 자라서 패션 디자이너가 되었다. Unit 03 - B

- I am so happy **to be** back home safely. 나는 집에 무사히 돌아와서 매우 기쁘다. Unit 03 - C

- The lesson is difficult 7 \_\_\_\_\_. 그 수업은 이해하기에 어렵다. Unit 03 - E

- She must be smart 8 \_\_\_\_\_ the problem.

그 문제를 풀다니 그녀는 똑똑한 것이 틀림없다. Unit 03 - F

- The question was difficult 9 \_\_\_\_\_ to answer.

그 질문은 내가 대답하기에 어려웠다. Unit 04 - A

- Ron was **too full to eat** the dessert. Ron은 너무 배가 불러서 디저트를 먹을 수 없었다. Unit 04 - B

- The hall is **large** 10 \_\_\_\_\_ **to fit** a hundred people.

그 홀은 100명의 사람들을 수용할 만큼 충분히 크다. Unit 04 - B

## Q Answers

- 1 It 2 to prepare 3 what to do / what I should do 4 to finish 5 to keep 6 to become[be]  
7 to understand 8 to solve 9 for me 10 enough

ESSENTIAL RULES OF  
X ENGLISH GRAMMAR X

# CHAPTER 05

## 동명사

동명사는 문장에서 명사처럼

주어, 보어, 목적어 역할을 한다.

**UNIT 01** 동명사의 쓰임

**UNIT 02** 동명사와 to부정사

# 동명사의 쓰임

동명사는 「v-ing」의 형태로 명사처럼 문장 속에서 주어, 보어, 목적어 역할을 한다.

A

## 주어 역할

Riding a roller coaster is exciting but scary.

Cooking spaghetti was not difficult.

B

## 보어 역할

My favorite outdoor activity is **skiing**.

His hobby is **playing** online games.

C

## 목적어 역할

He *enjoyed playing* the drums. <동사의 목적어>

We talked *about changing* the plan. <전치사의 목적어>

① 동명사의 부정형은 동명사 앞에 not을 붙인다.

I thought of **not going** to Spain.

D

## 자주 쓰이는 동명사 구문

- be busy v-ing: ~하느라 바쁘다
- feel like v-ing: ~하고 싶다
- on v-ing: ~하자마자
- be worth v-ing: ~할 가치가 있다
- cannot help v-ing: ~하지 않을 수 없다
- go v-ing: ~하러 가다

This book **is worth reading** three times.

I **feel like staying** at home all day.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ up early is very hard for me.  
 ① Get      ② Getting      ③ To getting
- 2 I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ fun of others.  
 ① make      ② making      ③ to making
- 3 She went \_\_\_\_\_ with her friends.  
 ① shop      ② shopped      ③ shopping

# PRACTICE

Q Answer Key p.8

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 My hobby is (draw, drawing) pictures.
- 2 I gave up (trying, to try) to make her laugh.
- 3 (Meet, Meeting) my girlfriend makes me happy.
- 4 This movie is really long, but it is worth (watching, to watch).

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 She doesn't mind eats alone.
- 2 I'm scared of ride a skateboard.
- 3 Her job is design wedding dresses.
- 4 Take nice pictures is not difficult for me.

STEP  
3

보기를 참고하여 위의 두 문장과 의미가 통하도록 동명사를 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

보기 I cook Italian food. It is my job.  
→ My job is cooking Italian food.

- 1 He likes to go camping with his family. It is his favorite thing.  
→ His favorite thing is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 You eat too much fast food. It is not good for your health.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ is not good for your health.
- 3 Tina didn't keep her promise. She was sorry for it.  
→ Tina was sorry for \_\_\_\_\_.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그는 스테이크를 요리하느라 바쁘다. (cook)  
→ He \_\_\_\_\_ the steak.
- 2 나는 프랑스어를 말하는 것에 서투르다. (good at, speak)  
→ I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ French.
- 3 Avery는 나를 향해 계속 미소 지었다. (smile, at)  
→ Avery kept \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 나는 재미있는 영화를 보고 싶다. (feel, watch)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ a funny movie.

# 동명사와 to부정사

A

**동명사만 목적어로 취하는 동사:** enjoy, avoid, mind, finish, keep, give up, quit, practice 등  
Tiffany avoided **drinking** too much soda.

B

**to부정사만 목적어로 취하는 동사:** want, expect, hope, wish, plan, promise, agree, decide 등  
I didn't expect **to see** the movie star in Paris.

C

**동명사와 to부정사를 모두 목적어로 취하는 동사**

1 의미 차이가 없는 경우: begin, start, like, love, hate 등

She **began playing** the violin when she was four.

She **began to play** the violin when she was four.

2 의미 차이가 있는 경우: remember, forget, try 등

- remember v-ing: (과거에) ~했던 것을 기억하다 / remember to-v: (앞으로) ~할 것을 기억하다

I **remember going** to New York when I was ten.

**Remember to buy** the book after school.

- forget v-ing: (과거에) ~했던 것을 잊다 / forget to-v: (앞으로) ~할 것을 잊다

I can't **forget meeting** you last year.

Don't **forget to bring** your passport tomorrow.

- try v-ing: 시험 삼아 ~하다[해 보다] / try to-v: ~하려고 노력하다[애쓰다]

I **tried using** the new machine, but it didn't work.

He **tried to lose** three kilograms, but it was difficult.

① stop v-ing: ~하는 것을 멈추다 / stop to-v: ~하기 위해 멈추다(부사적 용법의 to부정사)

He **stopped looking** at his smartphone.

He **stopped to look** at his smartphone.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 I enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ baseball games.

- Ⓐ watch Ⓑ watching Ⓒ to watch

2 Kevin decided \_\_\_\_\_ his eating habits.

- Ⓐ change Ⓑ changing Ⓒ to change

3 Remember \_\_\_\_\_ off the TV before you go out.

- Ⓐ turn Ⓑ turning Ⓒ to turn

# PRACTICE

Q Answer Key p.8

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 We are planning (getting, to get) a cute cat.
- 2 I don't mind (waiting, to wait) outside.
- 3 They agreed (buying, to buy) a new sofa.
- 4 Don't forget (sending, to send) the emails tomorrow.

STEP  
2

( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 My sister and I promised \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturdays. (exercise)
- 2 You should finish \_\_\_\_\_ this book by tomorrow. (read)
- 3 Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_ football with me when we were young? (play)
- 4 You're not telling me the truth. Stop \_\_\_\_\_ to me. (lie)

STEP  
3

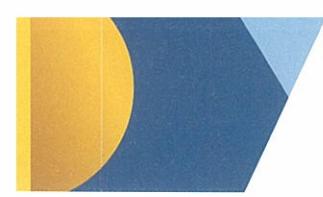
두 문장의 의미가 같도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 We began studying Spanish last month.  
→ We began \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish last month.
- 2 I hate to dance in front of others.  
→ I hate \_\_\_\_\_ in front of others.
- 3 She loves having a good time at the beach.  
→ She loves \_\_\_\_\_ a good time at the beach.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 한꺼번에 너무 많은 음식을 먹는 것을 피해라. (avoid, eat)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ too much food at once.
- 2 엄마는 로맨틱한 영화를 보는 것을 좋아하신다. (like, watch)  
→ My mom \_\_\_\_\_ romantic films.
- 3 나는 수영을 하는 법을 배우기로 결심했다. (decide, learn)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ how to swim.
- 4 그는 그 문을 열기 위해 다른 열쇠를 사용해 보았다. (try, use)  
→ He \_\_\_\_\_ another key to open the door.
- 5 나는 작년에 그에게서 돈을 빌렸던 것을 잊어버렸다. (forget, borrow, money)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ from him last year.



# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그들은 조만간 그들의 집을 팔기로 결심했다. (decide, sell, house)  
→ They \_\_\_\_\_ in the near future.
- 2 그는 약을 먹을 것을 잊어버렸다. (forget, take)  
→ He \_\_\_\_\_ the medicine.
- 3 그녀는 아침 일찍 일어나는 것을 싫어한다. (hate, get up)  
→ She \_\_\_\_\_ early in the morning.
- 4 그녀는 작년에 그와 만났던 것을 기억하지 못했다. (remember, meet)  
→ She didn't \_\_\_\_\_ last year.
- 5 나는 그 소년을 쳐다보지 않을 수 없었다. (help, look at)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ the boy.
- 6 그녀는 실수하는 것을 두려워한다. (make a mistake)  
→ She is afraid of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 많이 웃는 것은 당신의 건강에 좋다. (laugh, a lot, good)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ for your health.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 수리공은 차 수리를 끝마쳤다. (car, fixing, the, finished, has)  
→ The repairman \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 다른 비밀번호를 사용해 보는 게 어때? (try, a, using, password, different)  
→ Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 그녀는 많은 돈을 기부하는 것을 꺼리지 않는다. (lots of, donating, doesn't, money, mind)  
→ She \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 매일 밤을 새는 것은 불가능하다. (night, every, is, staying up)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ impossible.
- 5 나는 잠자리에 들기 전에 이를 닦는다. (bed, my teeth, to, brush, going, before)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 그의 새 앨범은 살 만한 가치가 있다. (worth, new album, buying, his, is)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_.

## C

보기와 같이 주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

**보기** I like to take pictures.  
 → My hobby is taking pictures.

1 I teach students Japanese.

→ My job is \_\_\_\_\_.

2 It is necessary to be honest.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ is necessary.

3 Remember that you have to send her an email about the project.

→ Remember \_\_\_\_\_ her an email about the project.

4 I forgot that I bought the milk.

→ I forgot \_\_\_\_\_.

5 She decided not to eat fast food in order to be healthy.

→ She stopped \_\_\_\_\_ in order to be healthy.

6 Patrick is busy. He is solving a crossword puzzle.

→ Patrick \_\_\_\_\_ a crossword puzzle.

## D

그림을 보고 ( ) 안에 주어진 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

1



2



3



1 Emily never gave up \_\_\_\_\_ . (complete the marathon)

2 My dad is \_\_\_\_\_ in the kitchen. (busy, prepare dinner)

3 Stefani hopes \_\_\_\_\_ of her favorite band. (go, the concert)

# REVIEW TEST

[1-4] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 He quit \_\_\_\_\_ for his health.

- ① smoke
- ② smokes
- ③ smoked
- ④ smoking
- ⑤ to smoke

2 They decided \_\_\_\_\_ yoga.

- ① learn
- ② learns
- ③ learned
- ④ learning
- ⑤ to learn

3 I remember \_\_\_\_\_ my mother's earrings when I was young.

- ① lose
- ② loses
- ③ lost
- ④ losing
- ⑤ to lose

4 We cannot help \_\_\_\_\_ in love with this cute and lovely cat.

- ① fall
- ② falls
- ③ fallen
- ④ falling
- ⑤ to fall

[5-6] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

- 5 ① Writing a poem is not easy.
- ② I don't like shopping online.
- ③ His hobby is collecting comic books.
- ④ She is good at cook Italian food.
- ⑤ On seeing me, he ran away.

6 ① He started playing the drums last year.

- ② Don't forget calling him tomorrow.
- ③ She stopped playing the online game.
- ④ She tried to persuade him, but failed.
- ⑤ Remember to clean your room today.

빈출

[7-8] 빈칸에 들어갈 말로 알맞지 않은 것을 고르시오.

7 We \_\_\_\_\_ to go on a trip.

- ① wanted
- ② decided
- ③ agreed
- ④ planned
- ⑤ minded

8 She \_\_\_\_\_ walking and jogging.

- ① enjoys
- ② promises
- ③ hates
- ④ loves
- ⑤ keeps

빈출

9 다음 우리말을 영어로 바르게 옮긴 것은?

그녀는 소음을 내지 않으려고 애쓰고 있다.

- ① She is trying making not any noise.
- ② She is trying not making any noise.
- ③ She is trying to make not any noise.
- ④ She isn't trying to make any noise.
- ⑤ She is trying not to make any noise.

## 서술형

[10-11] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

- 10** He was worried about to fail the exam.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 11** Please remember bringing your ticket with you to the event.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

[12-13] 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 고르시오.

- 12** ① I hate to missing class.  
 ② I started to go on a diet.  
 ③ He isn't good at play baseball.  
 ④ His job is sell used computers.  
 ⑤ Read a newspaper is a good habit.

- 13** ① I hope seeing his concert someday.  
 ② She avoided talking about the issue.  
 ③ He promised giving me the book.  
 ④ Violet kept to practice ballet.  
 ⑤ We enjoyed to watch the soccer game.

## 서술형

[14-17] ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 14** You can try \_\_\_\_\_ our product for free. Don't miss this chance! (use)

- 15** He forgot \_\_\_\_\_ his alarm last night, so he woke up late. (set)

- 16** She didn't agree \_\_\_\_\_ the schedule. (change)

- 17** I need some clothes for a field trip. Let's go \_\_\_\_\_. (shop)

- 18** 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분을 바르게 고친 것은?

- ① I hope buy a new smartphone.  
→ buying
- ② I can't help think about him.  
→ to think
- ③ He promised join our club.  
→ joining
- ④ She gave up attend the meetings.  
→ to attend
- ⑤ He forgot visit my house last week.  
→ visiting

**서술형**

[19~21] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

**19** 좋은 직업을 구하는 것은 쉽지 않다.  
(is, not, finding, good, a, easy, job)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

**20** 그녀는 캠핑을 가지 않을까 생각 중이다.  
(not, going, about, camping)

→ She is thinking \_\_\_\_\_.

**21** 그는 자신의 개들과 산책하는 것을 아주 좋아한다.  
(he, taking, dogs, his, with, a walk, loves)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

**서술형**

[22~24] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**22** Paul은 지금 그의 수학 숙제를 하느라 바쁘다.  
(busy, math, homework)

→ Paul \_\_\_\_\_ now.

**23** 그는 친구들과 함께 영어 말하기를 연습한다.  
(practice, speak)

→

English with his friends.

**24** 내 여동생은 종종 그녀의 휴대 전화를 가져가는 것을 잊어버린다. (take, cell phone)

→ My sister often \_\_\_\_\_.

**25** 대화를 읽고 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

Adrian: Hi, Mr. Hill!

Mr. Hill: Excuse me, but do I know you?

Adrian: Yes, we met at a museum in Paris last month.

Mr. Hill: Oh, did we? Sorry, I don't remember.

→ Mr. Hill doesn't remember \_\_\_\_\_ Adrian before.

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① My hobby is singing and dancing.
- ② Adapting to a new place is not easy.
- ③ Tell lies is morally wrong.
- ④ I enjoy playing a game on my phone.
- ⑤ She really hoped meeting the singer.

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. I'm interested in go on a trip.
- b. How about seeing a doctor?
- c. My hobby is playing the guitar.
- d. He was busy to prepare for his wedding.
- e. Going outside late at night is not safe.

- ① a, b, c                    ② a, c, d  
 ③ a, d, e                    ④ b, c, d  
 ⑤ b, c, e

**30** On getting up in the morning, he drinks a glass of water.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

고난도

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- They began dancing on the stage.
- I finally finished to read this book.
- Would you mind turning off the light?
- My mother loves to drink tea with me.
- Monkeys are good at climbing tall trees.

- ① 1개                    ② 2개                    ③ 3개  
 ④ 4개                    ⑤ 5개

서술형 고난도

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** Learning a new language is not easy.  
 You have to be patient and enjoy to learn it. (1개)

서술형

[29-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** I wish traveling abroad this year.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**33** I went to see a musical. The ticket for the show was very expensive, but it was worth to buy. (1개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ a roller coaster is exciting but scary.

롤러코스터를 타는 것은 신이 나지만 무섭다. **Unit 01 - A**

- My favorite outdoor activity is **skiing**. 내가 가장 좋아하는 야외 활동은 스키 타는 것이다. **Unit 01 - B**

- He enjoyed **playing** the drums. 그는 드럼 치는 것을 즐겼다. **Unit 01 - C**

- We talked about 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the plan. 우리는 그 계획을 바꾸는 것에 대해 이야기했다. **Unit 01 - C**

- This book is 3 \_\_\_\_\_ three times. 이 책은 세 번 읽을 가치가 있다. **Unit 01 - D**

- I **feel like staying** at home all day. 나는 온종일 집에 머물고 싶다. **Unit 01 - D**

- Tiffany avoided 4 \_\_\_\_\_ too much soda.

Tiffany는 너무 많은 탄산음료를 마시는 것을 피했다. **Unit 02 - A**

- I didn't expect 5 \_\_\_\_\_ the movie star in Paris.

나는 파리에서 그 영화배우를 볼 것을 기대하지 않았다. **Unit 02 - B**

- She began 6 \_\_\_\_\_ the violin when she was four.

그녀는 네 살이었을 때 바이올린을 연주하기 시작했다. **Unit 02 - C**

- I remember 7 \_\_\_\_\_ to New York when I was ten.

나는 열 살이었을 때 뉴욕에 갔던 것을 기억한다. **Unit 02 - C**

- Remember **to buy** the book after school. 방과 후에 그 책을 살 것을 기억해라. **Unit 02 - C**

- I can't forget **meeting** you last year. 나는 작년에 너를 만났던 것을 잊을 수 없다. **Unit 02 - C**

- Don't forget 8 \_\_\_\_\_ your passport tomorrow.

내일 네 여권을 가져오는 것을 잊지 마라. **Unit 02 - C**

- I tried **using** the new machine, but it didn't work.

나는 그 새 기계를 시험 삼아 이용해 보았지만 그것은 작동하지 않았다. **Unit 02 - C**

- He tried 9 \_\_\_\_\_ three kilograms, but it was difficult.

그는 3킬로그램을 감량하려고 노력했지만 그것은 어려웠다. **Unit 02 - C**

## Answers

1 Riding[To ride] 2 changing 3 worth reading 4 drinking 5 to see 6 playing[to play]

7 going 8 to bring 9 to lose



# CHAPTER 06

## 분사

**UNIT 01** 현재분사와 과거분사

**UNIT 02** 분사구문

분사에는 현재분사(v-ing)와  
과거분사(v-ed)가 있으며, 이들은  
형용사처럼 명사를 수식하거나 보어 역할을  
한다.

# 현재분사와 과거분사

분사는 형용사처럼 쓰여 명사를 수식하거나 주어나 목적어를 보충 설명하는 보어 역할을 한다.  
진행형(be + v-ing), 완료형(have + v-ed), 수동태(be + v-ed)의 동사구 일부로 쓰이기도 한다.

## A

## 현재분사 vs. 과거분사

1 현재분사(v-ing): 능동(~하는)이나 진행(~하고 있는)의 의미를 가진다.

**shocking news** <능동의 의미> / **a barking dog** <진행의 의미>

2 과거분사(v-ed): 수동(~된)이나 완료(~한)의 의미를 가진다.

**shocked people** <수동의 의미> / **fallen leaves** <완료의 의미>

## B

## 분사의 역할

1 명사 수식: 보통 명사 앞에서 수식하지만 수식어구가 함께 와서 길어질 때는 명사 뒤에서 수식한다.

The **sleeping puppy** is cute. Harry has a book **written** in German.

2 보어 역할

Julie walked **singing** a song.

Katie had her hair **done**. She looks younger.

- exciting (흥분되게 하는) – excited (흥분한)
- surprising (놀라게 하는) – surprised (놀란)
- amazing (놀라운) – amazed (놀란)
- shocking (충격적인) – shocked (충격받은)
- boring (지루한) – bored (지루해하는)
- tiring (피곤하게 하는) – tired (피곤한)

The comic book was **boring**. I am **bored** with my work.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I heard an \_\_\_\_\_ story.  
 ① interest      ② interesting      ③ interested
- 2 They seemed \_\_\_\_\_ at the news.  
 ① surprise      ② surprising      ③ surprised
- 3 Who is that man \_\_\_\_\_ hands with Mr. Lee?  
 ① shake      ② shaking      ③ shaken

## + PLUS

### 현재분사 vs. 동명사

- 현재분사: She is **teaching** English.  
(she ≠ teaching English)
- 동명사: My job is **teaching** English.  
(my job = teaching English)

### 현재분사 + 명사 vs. 동명사 + 명사

- 현재분사 + 명사: a **swimming** girl  
(→ a girl who is swimming)
- 동명사 + 명사: a **swimming** pool  
(→ a pool for swimming)

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.9

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 He was (shocking, shocked) at the news.
- 2 The girl (sitting, sat) on the bench is Isabel.
- 3 There are no seats (leaving, left) on the bus.
- 4 She talked (smiling, smiled) at me.
- 5 I had my eyesight (checking, checked) today.

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 Do you know that cry girl?
- 2 I stood watched the snow fall.
- 3 She looked surprising by my gift.
- 4 This is the picture painting by my mother.

STEP  
3

( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 Benjamin was looking for his \_\_\_\_\_ bag. (lose)
- 2 Don't wake the \_\_\_\_\_ baby. (sleep)
- 3 He bought a watch \_\_\_\_\_ in Switzerland. (make)
- 4 Who is the boy \_\_\_\_\_ with my teacher? (talk)
- 5 The woman \_\_\_\_\_ the big sunglasses is Tom's mother. (wear)

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그 지루한 영화에 대해 아무 말도 하지 마라. (bore, movie)  
→ Don't say anything about \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 나는 영어로 쓰인 이메일 한 통을 받았다. (email, write)  
→ I got \_\_\_\_\_ in English.
- 3 그 경기장에 있는 사람들은 흥분한 것처럼 보였다. (look, excite)  
→ The people in the stadium \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 나는 내 개가 그 소파 밑에서 자고 있는 걸 발견했다. (find, dog, sleep)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ under the sofa.

# 분사구문

부사절(접속사 + 주어 + 동사)을 분사를 이용해 줄여 쓴 구문이 분사구문이다.

A

## 분사구문 만들기

부사절의 주어가 주절의 주어와 같을 때, 부사절의 접속사와 주어를 생략하고 동사를 「v-ing」 형태로 바꾼다.

**Watching TV, I heard a strange sound.**

(← **When I was watching TV, I heard a strange sound.**)

cf. 부사절의 동사가 진행형인 경우 v-ing만 남긴다.

B

## 분사구문의 의미

1 시간, 때: ~할 때(when), ~하는 동안(while)

**Walking** down the street, I saw the singer.

(← **When I was walking** down the street, I saw the singer.)

2 동시동작: ~하면서(as)

**Listening** to music, I studied math.

(← **As I listened** to music, I studied math.)

3 이유, 원인: ~때문에(because, as, since)

**Feeling** ill, I didn't go shopping.

(← **Because I felt** ill, I didn't go shopping.)

4 조건: ~한다면(if)

**Taking** this train, you can go to Tokyo.

(← **If you take** this train, you can go to Tokyo.)

5 양보: ~에도 불구하고(though, although)

**Though living** near the park, I have never been there.

(← **Though I live** near the park, I have never been there.)

cf. 분사구문이 나타내는 뜻을 분명히 하기 위해 접속사를 밝히는 경우도 있다.

특히 양보의 분사구문은 접속사를 주로 남겨둔다.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 \_\_\_\_\_ the news, she was shocked.

- Ⓐ Hearing Ⓑ Hear Ⓒ Heard

2 \_\_\_\_\_ cold, he wore a thick coat.

- Ⓐ Be Ⓑ To be Ⓒ Being

3 \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi, you'll get there soon.

- Ⓐ Take Ⓑ Taking Ⓒ Taken

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.9

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 (Read, Reading) the magazine, I heard a bell ringing.
- 2 She talked to me, (smiling, smiled) brightly.
- 3 (Being, Been) poor, he couldn't buy a new car.
- 4 (To listen, Listening) to the radio, she fell asleep.

STEP  
2

다음 문장을 분사구문으로 바꿔 쓰시오.

- 1 When I cleaned my room, I found some money.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 If you come after 8:00 p.m., you can get a discount.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Because she is ill, she won't go to work today.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

STEP  
3

밑줄 친 분사구문을 「접속사 + 주어 + 동사」의 형태로 바꾸시오.

- 1 Standing so long in the rain, he was angry.

→ \_\_\_\_\_, he was angry.

- 2 Going straight, you will find the restaurant.

→ \_\_\_\_\_, you will find the restaurant.

- 3 Although having an exam the next day, he didn't study at all.

→ \_\_\_\_\_, he didn't study at all.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 우리의 숙제를 끝내고 난 후, 우리는 밖으로 나갔다. (finish, homework)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, we went out.

- 2 음악을 들으면서 그녀는 그림을 그렸다. (listen to, music)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, she drew a picture.

- 3 오른쪽으로 돌면 중식당이 보일 것이다. (turn right)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, you will see a Chinese restaurant.

# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그 연극은 정말 지루했다. (really, bore)  
→ The play \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 깨진 유리를 밟지 마라. (break, glass)  
→ Don't step on the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 아버지는 항상 나에게 재미있는 이야기들을 해주신다. (interest, story)  
→ My father always tells me \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 그는 그의 건강을 걱정하는 것처럼 보였다. (look, worry)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ about his health.
- 5 우리는 목록에 쓰여 있는 모든 것을 사야 한다. (everything, write)  
→ We should buy \_\_\_\_\_ on the list.
- 6 그 문 앞에 서 있는 소년은 내 사촌이다. (stand, in front of, door)  
→ The boy \_\_\_\_\_ is my cousin.
- 7 그녀는 그녀의 차를 거리에 주차된 채로 두었다. (keep, car, park)  
→ She \_\_\_\_\_ on the street.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 나를 보자 아기는 울기 시작했다. (began, me, seeing, the, baby)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ to cry.
- 2 경찰은 그 도둑이 나무 뒤로 숨는 것을 보았다. (thief, saw, the, hiding, the, police)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ behind a tree.
- 3 고기를 싫어하기 때문에 그는 스테이크를 주문하지 않았다. (order, he, hating, didn't, meat)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ the steak.
- 4 지금 출발하면 너는 버스를 탈 수 있을 것이다. (will, leaving, you, catch, now)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.
- 5 너는 Greg Smith라는 이름의 남자를 아니? (a, named, you, know, Greg Smith, do, man)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 길을 따라 걸어가는 동안 나는 Jina를 만났다. (walking, I, street, down, the, met)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ Jina.

**C**

주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1** I had to work a lot yesterday. I felt like having a rest. (tire)
  - a. Yesterday was a \_\_\_\_\_ day.
  - b. I felt \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2** Sam has a job doing the same thing repeatedly, so he doesn't enjoy it. (bore)
  - a. Sam's job is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - b. Sam is \_\_\_\_\_ with his repetitive work.
- 3** Brian was very healthy. We didn't expect him to die. (shock)
  - a. Brian's death was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - b. We were \_\_\_\_\_ by Brian's death.
- 4** Jen is going on a school trip next week. She can't wait to go. (excite)
  - a. Jen is \_\_\_\_\_ about going on the school trip.
  - b. Jen thinks that the school trip will be \_\_\_\_\_.

**D**

그림을 보고 분사와 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.



- 1** This is \_\_\_\_\_ by my mom during our summer vacation.  
(a picture, take)
- 2** \_\_\_\_\_, I posed for the picture. (talk, on the phone)
- 3** The girl \_\_\_\_\_ is my sister, Ella. (build, the sandcastle)
- 4** The man \_\_\_\_\_ next to Ella is my father.  
(wear, sunglasses)

# REVIEW TEST

[1-4] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I am going to see the \_\_\_\_\_ sun on New Year's Day.

- ① rise
- ② rose
- ③ risen
- ④ rising
- ⑤ to rise

- 2 Some of the people \_\_\_\_\_ to my birthday party didn't come.

- ① invite
- ② invites
- ③ inviting
- ④ invited
- ⑤ to inviting

- 3 She sat \_\_\_\_\_ with a teacher.

- ① talk
- ② talked
- ③ talking
- ④ to talking
- ⑤ being talked

- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain, I felt cold.

- ① Walk
- ② Walking
- ③ To walk
- ④ Walked
- ⑤ Being walked

5 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것은?

- ① He lay on the sofa, reading a book.
- ② Hear the news, she began to cry.
- ③ My father is interesting in playing golf.
- ④ She had a letter writing by Jim.
- ⑤ Everybody hates that bored class.

[6-8] 빈칸에 들어갈 말이 순서대로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ in making robots.
- Making robots is very \_\_\_\_\_.

- ① interest – interest
- ② interesting – interested
- ③ interested – interesting
- ④ interesting – interesting
- ⑤ interested – interested

[7-8] 밑줄 친 부분의 의미로 가장 적절한 것을 고르시오.

- 7 Being tired, she went to bed early.

- ① If she was tired
- ② As she was tired
- ③ After she was tired
- ④ While she was tired
- ⑤ Though she was tired

- 8 Walking down this road, you will see his office.

- ① Unless you walk down this road
- ② Because you walk down this road
- ③ If you walk down this road
- ④ Though you walk down this road
- ⑤ Since you walk down this road

[9-10] 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분이 잘못된 것을 고르시오.

- 9**
- ① The soccer game was very exciting.
  - ② The online game was not interesting.
  - ③ He is always tired after work.
  - ④ He was boring with reading the same book.
  - ⑤ I was shocked by the news of her accident.

## 빈출

[13-15] 밑줄 친 부분의 쓰임이 나머지 넷과 다른 것을 고르시오.

- 13**
- ① Look at the lady wearing a red dress.
  - ② He stood looking at the poster.
  - ③ She saw him walking in the park.
  - ④ His hobby is volunteering for charities.
  - ⑤ Who is that boy swimming in the pool?

- 10**
- ① He has a cat calling Lucky.
  - ② The barking dog looks scary.
  - ③ We enjoyed the exciting musical.
  - ④ The boy sitting on the bench is my son.
  - ⑤ Having a headache, I went to a doctor.

- 14**
- ① The sleeping baby is so cute.
  - ② He bought a new sleeping bag.
  - ③ A sleeping cat dreams of mice.
  - ④ The sleeping boy next to me is my cousin.
  - ⑤ Don't touch a sleeping dog.

## 서술형

## 빈출

[11-12] 밑줄 친 부분을 분사구문으로 바꿔 쓰시오.

- 11** Because he was sick, he didn't attend the meeting.

→ \_\_\_\_\_, he didn't attend the meeting.

- 12** If you exercise regularly, you will lose weight.

→ \_\_\_\_\_, you will lose weight.

- 15** Although being full, we ordered dessert.

- ② Being in a bad mood, I went home.
- ③ Being angry, he didn't say anything.
- ④ Being rich is good, but it is not everything.
- ⑤ Being poor, he couldn't go to college.

## 서술형

[16-18] ( ) 안의 말을 적절한 형태로 써서 문장을 완성하시오.

- 16** \_\_\_\_\_ at the back, I couldn't hear well. (sit)

**17** The news about the car accident was \_\_\_\_\_ . (shock)

**18** They tried hard to open the \_\_\_\_\_ door. (lock)

**19** 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분을 잘못 고친 것은?

① Spill coffee, I got my shirt dirty.

→ Spilling

② I picked up the fall leaf.

→ fallen

③ I have a break watch.

→ broken

④ She plans to buy a use car.

→ using

⑤ The man buy flowers is my father.

→ buying

**22** 눈사람을 만들고 있는 저 소녀들은 행복해 보인다.  
(girl, build)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ a snowman  
look happy.

서술형

**23** 우리말과 일치하도록 주어진 조건에 맞게 문장을 완성하시오.

한국에서 공부하는 동안, 그는 좋은 친구들을 많이 사귀었다.

- 〈조건〉 1. study, Korea를 이용할 것  
2. 접속사를 쓰지 말 것

→ \_\_\_\_\_, he made  
many good friends.

서술형

[20-22] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**20** 나는 사고로 손상된 그 차를 고쳐야만 한다.  
(car, damage)

→ I should fix \_\_\_\_\_  
in the crash.

서술형

[24-25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

**24** 나는 그가 기타를 연주하는 것을 들었다.  
(heard, him, guitar, I, the, playing)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

**21** 우리는 최선을 다했지만 결과는 실망스러웠다.  
(disappoint)

→ We did our best, but the result

**25** 밝게 웃으면서 그는 손을 흔들었다.  
(smiling, waved, he, brightly)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① This is the book writing by Mr. Potter.
- ② I heard her name shouted loudly.
- ③ Dan was very excited to win the game.
- ④ Be careful with the breaking pieces of glass.
- ⑤ Have you seen any interesting movies recently?

**서술형**

[29-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** There are many people surprised at the news.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. She is interesting in construction.
- b. I felt sad when I saw the bird's broken wings.
- c. Taken this bus, you can be there on time.
- d. Being cold, I wore a mask.
- e. Crying loudly, the baby looked for her mother.

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| ① a, b, c | ② a, c, d |
| ③ a, d, e | ④ b, d, e |
| ⑤ c, d, e |           |

**30** The tall woman spoken in front of the audience is my mother.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**31** I saw a picture drawing by Leonardo da Vinci.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**서술형**

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- Sitting on the sofa, I read a magazine.
- Look at the baby holding a doll.
- I finally found my lost wallet last week.
- Living near the park, I've been there many times.
- Do you know the girl stood beside the door?

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| ① 1개 | ② 2개 | ③ 3개 |
| ④ 4개 | ⑤ 5개 |      |

**32** When I went to Spain, I saw a castle building a long time ago. It looked beautiful. (1개)

**33** A car hit a boy ridden a bicycle. People passing by called 119. The boy injuring in the accident is in the hospital now. (2개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- The <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ puppy is cute. 그 잠자는 강아지는 귀엽다. **Unit 01 - B**
- Harry has a book <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in German. Harry는 독일어로 쓰인 책을 가지고 있다. **Unit 01 - B**
- Julie walked <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a song. Julie는 노래를 부르면서 걸었다. **Unit 01 - B**
- Katie had her hair <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. She looks younger.  
Katie는 머리를 했다. 그녀는 더 어려 보인다. **Unit 01 - B**
- The comic book was <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. 그 만화책은 지루했다. **Unit 01 - B**
- I am <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with my work. 나는 내 일이 지루하다. **Unit 01 - B**
- **Watching** TV, I heard a strange sound. TV를 보다가 나는 이상한 소리를 들었다. **Unit 02 - A**
- **Walking** down the street, I saw the singer. 길을 걸어가다가 나는 그 가수를 보았다. **Unit 02 - B**
- <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to music, I studied math. 나는 음악을 들으면서 수학을 공부했다. **Unit 02 - B**
- **Feeling** ill, I didn't go shopping. 나는 아파서 쇼핑하러 가지 않았다. **Unit 02 - B**
- <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ this train, you can go to Tokyo. 이 기차를 탄다면 너는 도쿄에 갈 수 있다. **Unit 02 - B**
- **Though** <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ near the park, I have never been there.  
나는 공원 근처에 살지만 그곳에 가 본 적이 한 번도 없다. **Unit 02 - B**

## Answers

- <sup>1</sup> sleeping <sup>2</sup> written <sup>3</sup> singing <sup>4</sup> done <sup>5</sup> boring <sup>6</sup> bored <sup>7</sup> Listening[As I listened]  
<sup>8</sup> Taking[If you take] <sup>9</sup> living[I live]

ESSENTIAL RULES OF  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

# CHAPTER 07

## 수동태

수동태는 주어가 동사의 영향을 받거나  
동작을 당할 때 쓴다.

**UNIT 01** 능동태와 수동태

**UNIT 02** 수동태의 여러 가지 형태

**UNIT 03** 주의해야 할 수동태

# 능동태와 수동태

A

## 능동태 vs. 수동태

- 능동태: 주어가 어떤 동작을 하는 것을 말할 때 쓴다.
- 수동태: 「be + v-ed」 형태로, 주어가 동사의 영향을 받거나 동작을 당하는 것을 말할 때 쓴다.

Many fans **love** the singer. <능동태>

The singer **is loved** by many fans. <수동태>

B

## 「by + 행위자」의 생략

행위자가 막연한 일반인일 때나, 분명하지 않거나 중요하지 않을 때 「by + 행위자」는 생략할 수 있다.

English **is spoken** in many countries.

My purse **was stolen** last week.

This wine **was made** in Chile.

C

## 수동태의 시제

- 1 과거시제: be동사의 과거형 + v-ed

Anna repaired my computer.

→ My computer **was repaired** by Anna.

- 2 미래시제: will be + v-ed

Ted will do the new project.

→ The new project **will be done** by Ted.

- 3 진행형: be동사 + being + v-ed

My dad is cooking dinner.

→ Dinner **is being cooked** by my dad.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 This room \_\_\_\_\_ by the staff every day.

Ⓐ clean Ⓑ is cleaning Ⓒ is cleaned

- 2 This art gallery \_\_\_\_\_ in 1982.

Ⓐ built Ⓑ was built Ⓒ is being built

- 3 The broken window \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

Ⓐ will fixed Ⓑ will be fixed Ⓒ will being fixed

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.10

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I (made, was made) some sandwiches for the picnic.
- 2 This app (uses, is used) by many people around the world.
- 3 The coffee (is be made, is being made) by my sister now.
- 4 The new movie (will released, will be released) next week.

STEP  
2

다음을 수동태 문장으로 바꿔 쓰시오.

- 1 Many people visit this website.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 The scientists watched the bird.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 They will choose Kate as the best actress.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 John is baking the chocolate cookies now.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

STEP  
3

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 The math problem was solving by Jack.
- 2 The Arts Festival is be held in Busan now.
- 3 The roof will painted green next month.
- 4 A lot of information is share on the internet.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 이 그림은 피카소에 의해 그려졌다. (draw)

→ This picture \_\_\_\_\_ Picasso.

- 2 새로운 쇼핑몰이 우리 동네에 지어질 것이다. (build)

→ A new shopping mall \_\_\_\_\_ in our town.

- 3 전화 통화는 지금 녹음되는 중이다. (record)

→ The call \_\_\_\_\_ now.

- 4 학급 반장은 학생들에 의해 선출된다. (elect)

→ The class president \_\_\_\_\_ the students.

# 수동태의 여러 가지 형태

A

## 수동태의 부정문 · 의문문 / 조동사의 수동태

- 1 수동태의 부정문: be동사 + not + v-ed

This email **wasn't written** by Frank.

- 2 수동태의 의문문: be동사 + 주어 + v-ed?

**Were** you **bitten** by a dog?

- 3 조동사의 수동태: 조동사 + be + v-ed

My homework **should be done** by tomorrow.

B

## 4형식 · 5형식 문장의 수동태

- 1 4형식 문장의 수동태: 4형식 문장은 목적어가 두 개(간접목적어, 직접목적어)이므로 보통 두 개의 수동태 문장이 가능하다. 직접목적어를 주어로 수동태를 만들 때는 간접목적어 앞에 전치사를 쓴다. 대개는 to를 쓰지만 동사가 buy, make, get인 경우 for를, ask인 경우 of를 쓴다.

My husband **gave me this ring**.

→ I **was given** this ring by my husband. <간접목적어를 주어로 할 때>

→ This ring **was given to** me by my husband. <직접목적어를 주어로 할 때>

- 2 5형식 문장의 수동태: 목적어가 수동태의 주어가 된다.

My brother **named our cat Kitty**.

→ Our cat **was named** Kitty by my brother.

- 3 사역동사나 지각동사의 수동태: 사역동사 make 다음에 목적격 보어로 쓰인 동사원형은 수동태 문장에서 to부정사로 바뀌고, 지각동사 다음에 목적격 보어로 쓰인 동사원형은 수동태 문장에서 현재분사나 to부정사로 바뀐다.

Karen made us **do the dishes**.

→ We **were made to do** the dishes by Karen.

I saw Sam go out with Karen.

→ Sam **was seen going[to go]** out with Karen.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 This ice cream \_\_\_\_\_ by me.

Ⓐ be not made Ⓑ was not made Ⓒ did not make

- 2 The computer was bought \_\_\_\_\_ Tom by his father.

Ⓐ to Ⓑ for Ⓒ of

- 3 I was made \_\_\_\_\_ the messy kitchen.

Ⓐ clean Ⓑ cleaning Ⓒ to clean

## PLUS

4형식 동사 중 buy, make, sell과 같은 동사는 사람이 주어인 수동태로 쓰지 않는다.

I bought my brother a watch.

→ A watch was bought for my brother by me.

→ My brother was bought a watch by me.

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.10

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 (Was, Did) the new product announced yesterday?
- 2 This card was sent (to, for) me by Jane for my birthday.
- 3 Joy was heard (play, playing) the flute in her room last night.
- 4 The school rules (must be followed, be must followed) by all the students.

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 I was didn't invited to Brad's birthday party.
- 2 Milk must being kept in the refrigerator.
- 3 My little brother was made wash his hands before dinner.
- 4 The sneakers were bought to me by my parents.

STEP  
3

다음을 수동태 문장으로 바꿔 쓰시오.

- 1 My mom made me wake up early.

→ I \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 Mr. Smith teaches us English.

→ We \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 My doctor advised me to eat more vegetables.

→ I \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 You can remove this sticker easily.

→ This sticker \_\_\_\_\_.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 이 사진들은 네가 찍었던 거니? (picture, take)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ by you?

- 2 이 주스는 엄마가 나를 위해 만들어 주셨다. (make)

→ This juice \_\_\_\_\_ by my mom.

- 3 Brian이 통화하는 것이 나에게 들렸다. (hear, talk)

→ Brian \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone by me.

- 4 Julia는 그녀의 부모님에 의해 공주라고 불렸다. (call, Princess)

→ Julia \_\_\_\_\_ her parents.

# 주의해야 할 수동태

A

**동사구의 수동태:** 동사구는 수동태로 바꿀 때 하나의 동사로 취급한다.

The truck *ran over* the garbage can.

→ The garbage can **was run over** by the truck.

※ 여러 가지 동사구

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| • take care of: ~을 돌보다 | • look after: ~을 돌보다    |
| • run over: (차가) ~을 치다 | • laugh at: ~을 비웃다      |
| • look up to: ~을 존경하다  | • look down on: ~을 경멸하다 |
| • bring up: ~을 키우다     | • put off: ~을 연기하다      |

B

**수동태로 쓰이지 않는 동사**

1 목적어가 없는 자동사: appear, disappear, happen 등

My favorite singer **appeared** on TV.

My favorite singer **was appeared** on TV.

2 소유나 상태를 나타내는 타동사: have(~을 가지고 있다), resemble(~을 닮다), fit(~에 어울리다) 등

I **have** a blog.

A ~~blog~~ is had by me.

C

**by 이외의 전치사를 사용하는 경우**

보통 행위자는 by를 사용하여 나타내지만, 다른 전치사를 사용하는 경우도 있다.

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| • be covered with: ~로 덮여 있다         | • be interested in: ~에 흥미가 있다             |
| • be pleased with: ~로 기뻐하다          | • be filled with: ~로 가득 차다 (= be full of) |
| • be satisfied with: ~에 만족하다        | • be known to: ~에게 알려지다                   |
| • be disappointed with[at]: ~에 실망하다 | • be made of[from]: ~로 만들어지다              |
| • be surprised at: ~에 놀라다           |   |

This box **is filled with** candy.

We **were surprised at** his sudden visit.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 My puppy \_\_\_\_\_ by my friend Dylan yesterday.

- Ⓐ looked after Ⓑ was looked Ⓒ was looked after

2 We were disappointed \_\_\_\_\_ the band's new song.

- Ⓐ from Ⓑ with Ⓒ to

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.11

STEP  
1

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 The baby was taken care by the nurse.
- 2 The man suddenly was disappeared.
- 3 The cake is covered on chocolate.
- 4 His nose is resembled by his father's.

STEP  
2

다음을 수동태 문장으로 바꿔 쓰시오.

- 1 My boss put off the meeting.  
→ The meeting \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Sophia looks up to Mr. Smith.  
→ Mr. Smith \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Life on Jeju Island satisfies them.  
→ They \_\_\_\_\_ on Jeju Island.

STEP  
3

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기

of

with

to

in

\_\_\_\_\_

- 1 Are you interested \_\_\_\_\_ painting?
- 2 That bed frame was made \_\_\_\_\_ wood.
- 3 They were pleased \_\_\_\_\_ their son's progress.
- 4 The news was known \_\_\_\_\_ all the students in the school.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그의 시는 다른 사람들에게 비웃음을 샀다. (laugh at)  
→ His poem \_\_\_\_\_ others.
- 2 나는 그의 사고 소식에 놀랐다. (surprise)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ the news of his accident.
- 3 그 신발 가게는 손님들로 가득 차 있었다. (fill)  
→ The shoe store \_\_\_\_\_ customers.
- 4 많은 야생 동물이 차에 치였다. (run over)  
→ Lots of wild animals \_\_\_\_\_ cars.

# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 “로미오와 줄리엣”은 셰익스피어에 의해 쓰였다. (write)

→ *Romeo and Juliet* \_\_\_\_\_ Shakespeare.

- 2 새 중학교가 우리 집 근처에 지어지고 있다. (build)

→ A new middle school \_\_\_\_\_ near my house.

- 3 그녀의 연설은 다음 주까지 연기될 것이다. (put off)

→ Her speech \_\_\_\_\_ until next week.

- 4 Chris는 사장에 의해 손님들을 안내하게 되었다. (make, guide)

→ Chris \_\_\_\_\_ the clients by his boss.

- 5 그 스케이트보드는 삼촌이 나에게 사 주신 것이다. (buy)

→ The skateboard \_\_\_\_\_ by my uncle.

- 6 이 이메일은 그 회사에서 나에게 보낸 것이다. (send)

→ This email \_\_\_\_\_ by the company.

- 7 나는 내 우산을 바구니에 놓았는데 그것이 사라졌다. (disappear)

→ I put my umbrella in the basket, but it \_\_\_\_\_.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 우리의 계획은 비밀로 지켜져야 한다. (should, secret, be, kept)

→ Our plan \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 그 컴퓨터를 네가 망가뜨렸니? (computer, broken, the, you, by, was)

→ \_\_\_\_\_?

- 3 Sam이 버스 정류장에 서 있는 것을 Jenny가 봤다. (seen, standing, the, was, bus stop, at)

→ Sam \_\_\_\_\_ by Jenny.

- 4 그 애플파이는 내가 굽지 않았다. (not, by, was, me, baked)

→ The apple pie \_\_\_\_\_.

- 5 그는 그의 친구들에 의해 천사라고 불린다. (friends, is, an angel, he, by, his, called)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 “정글북”에서 Mowgli는 늑대에 의해 키워졌다. (brought, was, wolves, up, by, Mowgli)

→ In *The Jungle Book*, \_\_\_\_\_.

## C

수동태와 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 대화를 완성하시오.

- 1 A: How do you like your new job as a firefighter?  
B: It is really good. I \_\_\_\_\_ it. (satisfy)
- 2 A: Let's take the elevator.  
B: No, we can't. The elevator \_\_\_\_\_ now. (repair)
- 3 A: Sorry, Sarah. I wrote your name the wrong way.  
B: That's okay. That kind of mistake \_\_\_\_\_. (can, make, anyone)
- 4 A: Why did you go to the supermarket?  
B: Because I \_\_\_\_\_ some milk. (tell, get)
- 5 A: Can we use chocolate powder instead of sugar powder?  
B: No, the cake \_\_\_\_\_ sugar powder. Our customer asked for that. (should, cover)

## D

그림을 보고 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오. (단, 현재시제로 쓸 것)



- 1 The soccer players \_\_\_\_\_ their win. (please)
- 2 The girl \_\_\_\_\_ the food. (disappoint)
- 3 The boy \_\_\_\_\_ the singer's beautiful voice. (surprise)
- 4 My little brother \_\_\_\_\_ my grandfather. (take care of)

# REVIEW TEST

[1–5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 This red dress \_\_\_\_\_ by a famous designer.
- ① design      ② designing  
③ to design    ④ designed  
⑤ was designed

- 2 The present was sent \_\_\_\_\_ me by my best friend.
- ① to      ② at      ③ of  
④ by      ⑤ with

- 3 The potato pizza will \_\_\_\_\_ in thirty minutes.
- ① deliver      ② delivers  
③ delivering    ④ delivered  
⑤ be delivered

- 4 The two boys were made \_\_\_\_\_ fighting by their teacher.
- ① stop      ② stopped  
③ stopping    ④ to stop  
⑤ being stopped

- 5 My parents were surprised \_\_\_\_\_ my grades.

- ① in      ② to      ③ as  
④ at      ⑤ of

- 6 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것은?
- ① He suddenly was disappeared.  
② The sports car is had by the actor.  
③ This house built by my grandfather.  
④ My sister is resembled by my mother.  
⑤ The man was injured in the accident.

[7–8] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

- 7 ① My watch was stolen.  
② Were you hit by the snowball?  
③ The file was sent to me by Nora.  
④ The show will being finished in twenty minutes.  
⑤ Kevin was expected to come to the party.

- 8 ① Korean history is taught to us by Mr. Kim.  
② Ava was seen read a book in the café.  
③ Tofu should be kept in the refrigerator.  
④ This teddy bear was made for me by my friend.  
⑤ The picnic was put off because of the bad weather.

[9-10] 다음 우리말을 영어로 바르게 옮긴 것을 고르시오.

**9** 이 치즈 케이크는 엄마를 위해 만들어졌다.

- ① This cheesecake made Mom.
- ② This cheesecake was made Mom.
- ③ This cheesecake was made by Mom.
- ④ This cheesecake was made for Mom.
- ⑤ This cheesecake was made of Mom.

**10** 그 나무는 어제 버스에 치였다.

- ① The tree ran over a bus yesterday.
- ② The tree ran over by a bus yesterday.
- ③ The tree was run by a bus yesterday.
- ④ The tree was run over a bus yesterday.
- ⑤ The tree was run over by a bus yesterday.

서술형      빈출

[11-13] ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**11** The magazine \_\_\_\_\_ by many teenagers in the past. (read)

**12** We were made \_\_\_\_\_ a diary in English by our English teacher. (keep)

**13** The festival will \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend. (hold)

빈출

[14-15] 빈칸에 공통으로 들어갈 말을 고르시오.

**14**

- I am satisfied \_\_\_\_\_ the result.
- The bottle was filled \_\_\_\_\_ juice.

- ① in
- ② to
- ③ as
- ④ by
- ⑤ with

**15**

- This mouse pad is given \_\_\_\_\_ everyone as a free gift.
- The singer's name is known \_\_\_\_\_ people around the world.

- ① in
- ② to
- ③ as
- ④ by
- ⑤ with

서술형

[16-18] 다음을 수동태 문장으로 바꿔 쓰시오.

**16** My favorite director filmed this movie.

→ This movie \_\_\_\_\_.

**17** That sitcom made the actress a superstar.

→ The actress \_\_\_\_\_.

**18** Many workers look up to my boss.

→ My boss \_\_\_\_\_.

서술형

[23-25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

**23** 그 도둑은 경찰에 잡힐 것이다.

(will, by, police, be, the, caught)

→ The thief \_\_\_\_\_.

**19** 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분이 잘못된 것은?

- ① I am pleased with Eric's decision.
- ② The pretty doll was made of paper.
- ③ I was disappointed to his answer.
- ④ The bed was covered with a sheet.
- ⑤ Jay is interested in hip hop dance.

**24** 지금 회의에서 중요한 문제들이 이야기되고 있다.  
(talked, are, issues, about, being, important)

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
in the meeting now.

서술형

[20-22] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**20** Alice는 반의 모두가 좋아한다. (like)

→ Alice \_\_\_\_\_ everyone  
in the class.

**25** 밖에서 내 어린 남동생이 우는 소리가 들렸다.  
(little, crying, my, was, heard, brother)

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
outside.

**21** 재미있는 이야기를 선생님께서 수업 시간에 우리에게 해 주셨다. (tell)

→ An interesting story \_\_\_\_\_  
by my teacher in class.

고난도

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① Was this report wrote by you?
- ② Some cars are being sold on the internet.
- ③ The house will be cleaned by my husband.
- ④ The players were made practice harder by their coach.
- ⑤ The advice was given for me by my parents.

**22** 그의 발명품은 그의 친구들에게 비웃음을 당했다.  
(laugh at)

→ His invention \_\_\_\_\_  
his friends.

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. My mom is satisfied with her new car.  
 b. The floor was covered with dust.  
 c. This ice cream was made by fresh milk.  
 d. The decision cannot be put off any longer.  
 e. We are very pleased for your service.

- ① a, b, c      ② a, b, d  
 ③ a, d, e      ④ b, c, e  
 ⑤ b, d, e

서술형

[30-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**30** Some gold was found in the ship.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- I was surprised at her response.
- I'm not interested in other opinions.
- The project will be completed in a few days.
- The flowers were not given to me by my boyfriend.
- The accident was happened in the late afternoon.

- ① 1개      ② 2개      ③ 3개  
 ④ 4개      ⑤ 5개

**31** Sophia was brought by up her uncle.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

서술형 고난도

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** The conference was held in a famous hotel. We arrived there on time. It was filled by many people. (1개)

**29** 우리말과 일치하도록 주어진 조건에 맞게 문장을 완성하시오.

그 아이는 영웅에 의해 구조되었니?

- 〈조건〉 1. the child, rescue, the hero를 이용  
할 것  
2. 7단어로 쓸 것

→ \_\_\_\_\_ ?

33

This is a great film. It is been seen all over the world now. Its director is looked up to many film students. (2개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- The singer **is loved** by many fans. 그 가수는 많은 팬에 의해 사랑받는다. **Unit 01 - A**
- English <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in many countries. 영어는 많은 나라에서 말해진다. **Unit 01 - B**
- My computer **was repaired** by Anna. 내 컴퓨터는 Anna에 의해 수리되었다. **Unit 01 - C**
- The new project <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **done** by Ted.  
새 프로젝트는 Ted에 의해 수행될 것이다. **Unit 01 - C**
- Dinner <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **cooked** by my dad. 저녁 식사는 우리 아빠에 의해 요리되고 있다. **Unit 01 - C**
- This email **wasn't written** by Frank. 이 이메일은 Frank에 의해 쓰이지 않았다. **Unit 02 - A**
- <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ by a dog? 너는 개에게 물렸니? **Unit 02 - A**
- My homework **should be done** by tomorrow. 내 숙제는 내일까지 끝나야 한다. **Unit 02 - A**
- This ring <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me by my husband. 이 반지는 내 남편에 의해 나에게 주어졌다. **Unit 02 - B**
- Our cat **was named** Kitty by my brother.  
우리 고양이는 내 남동생에 의해 Kitty라고 이름 지어졌다. **Unit 02 - B**
- We <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **do** the dishes by Karen. 우리는 Karen에 의해 설거지를 하게 되었다. **Unit 02 - B**
- Sam **was seen going[to go]** out with Karen. Sam이 Karen과 함께 나가는 것이 보였다. **Unit 02 - B**
- The garbage can <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the truck. 그 쓰레기통은 그 트럭에 치였다. **Unit 03 - A**
- My favorite singer **appeared** on TV. 내가 가장 좋아하는 가수가 TV에 나왔다. **Unit 03 - B**
- This box **is filled** <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ candy. 이 상자는 사탕으로 가득 차 있다. **Unit 03 - C**
- We **were surprised** <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ his sudden visit.  
우리는 그의 갑작스런 방문에 놀랐다. **Unit 03 - C**

## Q Answers

- <sup>1</sup> is spoken   <sup>2</sup> will be   <sup>3</sup> is being   <sup>4</sup> Were you bitten   <sup>5</sup> was given to   <sup>6</sup> were made to  
<sup>7</sup> was run over by   <sup>8</sup> with   <sup>9</sup> at



# CHAPTER 08



## 대명사

대명사는 명사를 대신하는 말이다.

**UNIT 01** 부정대명사 I

**UNIT 02** 부정대명사 II

**UNIT 03** 재귀대명사

# 부정대명사 Ⅰ

부정대명사란 불특정한 사람이나 사물을 가리키는 대명사이다.

cf. 일부 부정대명사(some, any, all, both, each)는 대명사로뿐만 아니라 동일한 의미의 형용사로도 쓰인다.

## A

**one:** 앞에서 언급된 것과 같은 종류의 불특정한 사람이나 사물을 가리킬 때 쓴다. 복수형은 ones이다.

I don't have a smartphone. I need to buy one.

= a smartphone

Will you buy the red apples or the green ones?

= apples

① 앞에서 언급된 것과 동일한 것을 가리킬 때는 it을 쓴다.

I've lost my watch. I can't find it.

= my watch

## B

**some / any:** '조금(의)', '약간(의)'의 의미로, some은 주로 긍정문이나 권유문, any는 주로 부정문이나 의문문에 쓴다.

I posted **some** pictures on my blog.

A: Would you like to have **some** snacks? B: Yes, I'd like to have **some**.

Nick has lost his wallet. He doesn't have **any** money.

A: Do you have **any** plans for this weekend? B: No, I don't have **any**.

## C

**all:** '모든', '모든 것'의 의미로, all이 대명사로 사람을 나타낼 때는 복수, 사물이나 상황을 나타낼 때는 단수 취급한다. 단, 「all (of) + 명사」인 경우 뒤에 나오는 명사의 수에 동사를 일치시킨다.

**All** were satisfied with the results. / **All** was calm this morning.

**All** the students *have* gone home. / **All** the work *is* finished.

## D

**both:** '둘 다', '양쪽(의)'의 의미로, 복수 취급한다.

Ray and Mike go snowboarding a lot in winter. **Both** *like* snowboarding.

## E

**each / every:** each는 '각각(의)', every는 '모든'의 의미로, 둘 다 단수 취급한다.

**Each** of the children *was* given a book.

**Every** product in this market *is* on sale.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 I only have small bags. I need a bigger \_\_\_\_\_.

- Ⓐ one Ⓑ it Ⓒ each

2 Daisy was hungry, so she ate \_\_\_\_\_ doughnuts.

- Ⓐ any Ⓑ some Ⓒ one

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.12

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 A: Do you have a computer? B: Yes, I have (one, it).
- 2 The man didn't catch (some, any) fish yesterday.
- 3 We have to move (all, every) these boxes.
- 4 (Each, All) student gave a different answer.
- 5 Do you prefer white sneakers or black (one, ones)?

STEP  
2

빈칸에 some과 any 중 알맞은 것을 쓰시오.

- 1 Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate cookies?
- 2 Can you play \_\_\_\_\_ musical instruments?
- 3 I went to the bakery to buy \_\_\_\_\_ sandwiches.
- 4 Don't buy \_\_\_\_\_ more skirts. You already have a lot of them.

STEP  
3

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기

one

it

both

every

all

- 1 I sold my old car and bought a new \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I have two brothers. \_\_\_\_\_ of them are taller than me.
- 3 I want to visit \_\_\_\_\_ country in South America.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the members have their membership cards.
- 5 His new novel is great. I enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 나는 수영복이 없다. 하나 사고 싶다. (get)  
→ I don't have a swimsuit. I want to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 나는 신선한 딸기들을 약간 샀다. (fresh, strawberry)  
→ I bought \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 우리는 둘 다 인도 음식을 좋아한다. (us, like)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ Indian food.
- 4 나는 세 명의 외국인을 만났다. 각각은 다른 나라 출신이었다. (be)  
→ I met three foreigners. \_\_\_\_\_ from a different country.

# 부정대명사 II

A

**another:** 또 하나 다른 것(의), 또 하나(의)

I don't like this T-shirt. Can you show me **another**?

cf. another는 대명사로뿐만 아니라 동일한 의미의 형용사로도 쓰인다.

Do you have these shoes in **another** color?

B

**one ~ the other ...:** (둘 중의) 하나는 ~, 다른 하나는 ...

I have two pets. **One** is a hamster, and **the other** is a rabbit.

- ① one ~, another ..., the other ...: (셋 중의) 하나는 ~, 다른 하나는 ..., 나머지 하나는 ...  
Today, I have exams in three classes.  
**One** is in math; **another** is in science; **the other** is in history.

C

**some ~ others ...:** 어떤 것[사람]들은 ~, 다른 어떤 것[사람]들은 ...

**Some** like hip hop, and **others** like ballads.

- ① some ~, the others ...: 어떤 것[사람]들은 ~, 나머지 모든 것[사람]들은 ...  
There are one hundred balls in the box.  
**Some** are black, and **the others** are white.

D

**each other / one another:** '서로'라는 의미로 보통 each other는 둘 사이에, one another는 셋 이상일 때 쓰지만, 종종 구별 없이 쓰이기도 한다.

Your blouse and pants match well with **each other**.

We all should help **one another**.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I don't like the pattern on this plate. Can you show me \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Ⓐ another      Ⓑ other      Ⓒ each other
- 2 Julie has two sons. One is three, and \_\_\_\_\_ is five.  
 Ⓐ another      Ⓑ the other      Ⓒ others
- 3 Some students walk to school, and \_\_\_\_\_ take the school bus.  
 Ⓐ another      Ⓑ the other      Ⓒ others
- 4 This town is very small. All the people in this town know \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Ⓐ another      Ⓑ other      Ⓒ one another

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.12

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I ate a piece of cake, but I'm still hungry. Can I have (another, other)?
- 2 Julie and Brian looked at (another, each other) and smiled.
- 3 I bought two cups of ice cream. (One, Some) is for me, and (the other, others) is for you.
- 4 There are a lot of people in the park. (One, Some) are playing badminton, and (the other, others) are sitting on the grass.

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 Roses are various colors. Some are red, and the others are pink.
- 2 My sister and Jason know the other. They have met before.
- 3 This muffin tastes delicious. Can I have other?
- 4 Gavin has two nicknames. One is "Prince," and others is "Elephant."

STEP  
3

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기 another the other the others others one another

- 1 I have five sons. One has blond hair, and \_\_\_\_\_ have brown hair.
- 2 Five basketball players were passing a ball to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Some people like meat, and \_\_\_\_\_ like fish.
- 4 I have three cats. One is white, \_\_\_\_\_ is gray, and \_\_\_\_\_ is black.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 James와 Lucy는 서로 좋아한다.  
→ James and Lucy like \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 커피 한 잔 더 마시겠어요?  
→ Will you drink \_\_\_\_\_ cup of coffee?
- 3 어떤 사람들은 코미디 영화를 좋아하고, 다른 어떤 사람들은 공포 영화를 좋아한다.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ like comedies, and \_\_\_\_\_ like horror movies.
- 4 나는 두 명의 외국인 친구가 있다. 한 명은 일본인이고, 다른 한 명은 프랑스인이다.  
→ I have two foreign friends. \_\_\_\_\_ is Japanese, and \_\_\_\_\_ is French.

# 재귀대명사

재귀대명사란 인칭대명사의 소유격이나 목적격에 -self[-selves]를 붙인 형태로 ‘~ 자신’이라는 의미를 가진다.

## A

**재귀용법:** 주어가 하는 동작의 대상이 주어 자신일 때, 즉 목적어가 주어와 같을 때 목적어 자리에 재귀대명사를 쓴다.

1 동사의 목적어

Seth hurt **himself** while he was playing soccer.

2 전치사의 목적어

Amy was proud of **herself** for doing her best.

※ 재귀대명사와 자주 쓰이는 동사

- dress oneself: 옷을 입다
- seat oneself: 앉다
- talk to oneself: 혼잣말하다
- enjoy oneself: 즐거운 시간을 보내다
- hurt oneself: 다치다
- excuse oneself: 변명하다, 자리를 뜨다
- burn oneself: 데다, 화상을 입다
- cut oneself: 베이다

## B

**강조용법:** 주어나 목적어를 강조하며, 이때의 재귀대명사는 생략할 수 있다.

He **himself** fixed the computer. / He fixed the computer **himself**. <주어 강조>

I like the singer **herself**, not her songs. <목적어 강조>

## C

### 재귀대명사를 포함한 관용표현

- by oneself: 홀로, 혼자서(= alone), 혼자 힘으로
- in itself: 원래, 그 자체가
- between ourselves: 우리끼리 이야기인데
- make oneself at home: 편히 쉬다[지내다]
- for oneself: (자기为了 위해) 혼자 힘으로
- beside oneself: 제정신이 아닌
- help oneself to: ~을 마음껏 먹다

Take off your jacket, and **make yourself at home**.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I taught \_\_\_\_\_ Italian.  
 ① me      ② my      ③ myself
- 2 My sister made the seafood pasta \_\_\_\_\_.  
 ① she      ② her      ③ herself
- 3 I built my dog's house \_\_\_\_\_ myself.  
 ① by      ② beside      ③ between

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.12

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Never mind. I was just talking to (me, myself).
- 2 Jason wrote the report (him, himself).
- 3 The children enjoyed (them, themselves) at the playground.
- 4 I was working in the office (by myself, beside myself) last night.

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 생략할 수 있으면 O표, 생략할 수 없으면 X표 하시오.

- 1 My sister burned herself on the stove.
- 2 The five-year-old boy painted this picture himself.
- 3 I didn't like the musical itself, but I liked the songs in it.
- 4 We seated ourselves at a table by the window.

STEP  
3

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오.

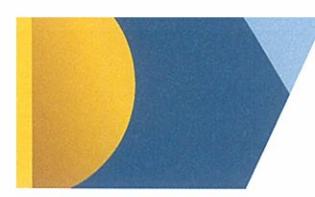
보기                  by                  between                  beside

- 1 She was almost \_\_\_\_\_ herself with excitement when she heard the shocking news.
- 2 I finished the project \_\_\_\_\_ myself. I didn't ask for any help.
- 3 Let's keep this secret \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves. Don't tell anyone else.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그 파스타에 들어간 토마토소스 자체가 맵다. (in)  
→ The tomato sauce in the pasta is spicy \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 네 숙제는 네가 직접 해야 한다. (do one's homework)  
→ You should \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 이 빵을 마음껏 드세요. 제가 방금 구웠어요. (help)  
→ Please \_\_\_\_\_ this bread. I just baked it.
- 4 Joshua는 중요한 전화를 받기 위해 회의에서 자리를 떴다. (excuse)  
→ Joshua \_\_\_\_\_ from the meeting to take an important phone call.



# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 우리 둘 다 Brown 선생님의 수업을 듣는다. (attend)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Brown's class.

- 2 각각의 사람은 다른 재능을 가지고 있다. (person, have)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ a different talent.

- 3 이 자판기는 지폐를 받지 않는다. 나는 동전들이 좀 필요하다. (need, coin)

→ This vending machine doesn't take bills. I \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 James는 어제 계단에서 떨어져서 다쳤다. (hurt)

→ James fell down the stairs and \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.

- 5 Hal은 이미 세 가지 언어를 말할 수 있는데도, 또 다른 언어를 배우고 있다. (one)

→ Hal already speaks three languages, and he is learning \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 우리 집에 컴퓨터가 두 대 있다. 하나는 데스크톱이고, 다른 하나는 노트북 컴퓨터이다. (desktop)

→ There are two computers in my house. \_\_\_\_\_, and  
\_\_\_\_\_ is a laptop.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 나는 영어 자체는 좋아하지만, 영어 시험은 싫어한다. (English, I, itself, like)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, but I hate English tests.

- 2 모든 사람은 행복한 삶을 살고 싶어 한다. (live, person, every, to, wants)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ a happy life.

- 3 그 아이들은 그들 힘으로 간식을 만들었다. (snack, themselves, a, for, made)

→ The children \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 여행하는 동안 그녀의 모든 돈이 도난당했다. (her, was, all, stolen, money)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ during the trip.

- 5 Mary와 Nancy는 10년 동안 서로 알고 지냈다. (known, years, other, have, each, ten, for)

→ Mary and Nancy \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 어떤 외국인들은 김치를 좋아하지만, 다른 어떤 이들은 좋아하지 않는다.

(foreigners, some, don't, kimchi, but, others, like)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

## C

다음 대화의 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기

any

one

both

ourselves

the other

it

- 1 A: Is there a convenience store near here?  
B: Yes, there is \_\_\_\_\_ on the corner.
- 2 A: Do you have Tom's phone number?  
B: Yes. I wrote \_\_\_\_\_ down.
- 3 A: Did you hear that? There's something outside!  
B: I didn't hear \_\_\_\_\_ sounds from outside. Maybe it was the TV.
- 4 A: Let us keep this between \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: Don't worry. I won't tell anyone.
- 5 A: I can't choose between this yellow shirt and this blue one.  
B: How about buying \_\_\_\_\_ of them? They are on sale now.
- 6 A: What's the signature dish of this restaurant?  
B: There are two. One is a potato pizza, and \_\_\_\_\_ is pumpkin soup.

## D

그림을 보고 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 써서 문장을 완성하시오.

1



2



3



- 1 Olivia \_\_\_\_\_ while she was cooking.
- 2 As the couple argued, they pointed at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The child has three balloons. One is red, \_\_\_\_\_ yellow, and \_\_\_\_\_ purple.

# REVIEW TEST

[1-5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 My brother gave me his bicycle, but I don't like \_\_\_\_\_.

- ① it
- ② one
- ③ other
- ④ another
- ⑤ the other

2 My computer is too old and slow. I'd like to buy a new \_\_\_\_\_.

- ① it
- ② one
- ③ other
- ④ another
- ⑤ the other

3 \_\_\_\_\_ airport has its own unique code.

- ① Both
- ② All
- ③ Some
- ④ Other
- ⑤ Each

4 There are five people in my family. We love \_\_\_\_\_.

- ① the other
- ② one
- ③ another
- ④ each another
- ⑤ one another

5

A: Is there \_\_\_\_\_ ice cream in the freezer?

B: No, there is not.

- ① any
- ② some
- ③ all
- ④ every
- ⑤ each

[6-8] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

6 ① Some of my friends live in Seoul.  
② Do you have any questions?  
③ Both of us have smartphones.  
④ Each question has five choices.  
⑤ Every students in the school like the teacher.

7 ① I can introduce me in English.  
② The two dogs barked at each other.  
③ Some like movies, and others like plays.  
④ I bought a magazine, but I left it on the bus.  
⑤ Will you have another glass of milk?

8 ① Jay hurt himself while he was moving.  
② Tom and Henry know each other well.  
③ This cake tastes good! Can I have another piece?  
④ Some students passed the math test, but others didn't.  
⑤ I read two books last week: one was interesting, but other was boring.

**9** 다음 밑줄 친 부분과 바꾸어 쓸 수 있는 것은?

I'm still thirsty. I'd like to have one more glass of water.

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| ① it         | ② all     |
| ③ other      | ④ another |
| ⑤ each other |           |

## 빈칸

[14-15] 빈칸에 들어갈 말이 순서대로 바르게 짹지어진 것을 고르시오.

**14**

I bought \_\_\_\_\_ cookies. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_?

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| ① any – any     | ② any – some    |
| ③ any – another | ④ another – any |
| ⑤ some – some   |                 |

## 서술형

**10** 두 문장의 의미가 같도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

Chloe traveled to England alone last summer.

→ Chloe traveled to England \_\_\_\_\_ last summer.

## 서술형

**11** 밑줄 친 단어를 올바른 형태로 고쳐 쓰시오.

The pot is very hot. Be careful not to burn you.

**15**

Every figure skater \_\_\_\_\_ very hard. All of them \_\_\_\_\_ many hours at the rink.

- |                         |
|-------------------------|
| ① practice – spend      |
| ② practices – spend     |
| ③ practice – spends     |
| ④ practices – spends    |
| ⑤ practicing – spending |

## 서술형

[16-17] 빈칸에 공통으로 들어갈 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

**16**

- This spoon is dirty. Could you bring me \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- I received three presents on my birthday. One was a bag; \_\_\_\_\_ was a novel; the other was a doll.

## 서술형

[12-13] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 대명사를 쓰시오.

**12** There are two kinds of flowers in the vase. \_\_\_\_\_ are roses, and \_\_\_\_\_ are tulips.**13** A: I'm looking for jeans. Can you recommend any good \_\_\_\_\_ to me?  
B: Sure. How about these?**17**

- Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ apples?
- Everyone likes different seasons: \_\_\_\_\_ like summer, and others like winter.

## 18 다음 우리말을 영어로 바르게 옮긴 것은?

어떤 사람들은 도시에 살고 싶어 하고, 다른 어떤 사람들은 시골에 살고 싶어 한다.

- ① One person wants to live in the city; the other wants to live in the country.
- ② One person wants to live in the city; another wants to live in the country.
- ③ Some people want to live in the city; the other wants to live in the country.
- ④ Some people want to live in the city; others want to live in the country.
- ⑤ Some people want to live in the city; the others want to live in the country.

### 서술형

[19-21] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

## 19 너는 저 칼에 베이지 않도록 조심해야 한다. (cut)

→ You should be careful not to \_\_\_\_\_ with that knife.

## 20 이 학교의 모든 학생들은 예술적 재능이 있다. (student)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ in this school has artistic talent.

## 21 Lucy와 Joe는 첼로 연주를 잘한다. 왜냐하면 둘 다 연습을 많이 하기 때문이다. (practice)

→ Lucy and Joe are good at playing the cello because \_\_\_\_\_ it a lot.

## 22 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분을 생략할 수 있는 것은?

- ① My hobby is taking pictures of myself.
- ② Mike wrote this poem himself.
- ③ I saw Amanda talking to herself.
- ④ Have you ever traveled by yourself?
- ⑤ Sue found herself in a strange place.

### 서술형

[23-25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

## 23 긴 여행 후 우리 모두는 매우 피곤했다. (tired, us, all, very, of, were)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ after the long trip.

## 24 수학여행은 재미있었고, 우리는 아주 즐거운 시간을 보냈다. (enjoyed, very, we, much, ourselves)

→ Our field trip was interesting, and \_\_\_\_\_.

## 25 디저트를 마음껏 드세요.

(the, to, dessert, yourself, help)

→ Please \_\_\_\_\_.

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① Have you seen my jacket? I can't find it.
- ② I don't have some plan for the trip.
- ③ Both women were wearing glasses.
- ④ Every room has a laptop and an internet connection.
- ⑤ Would you like to have any tea?

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. All the food was delicious.
- b. Both players were great today.
- c. Romeo and Juliet loved each another.
- d. Every cloud have a silver lining.
- e. They enjoyed themselves after the victory.

- ① a, b, c
- ② a, b, e
- ③ a, c, e
- ④ b, c, e
- ⑤ b, d, e

**고난도**

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- She called herself an angel.
- Each of us have our responsibility.
- Tony hurt himself while he was climbing the mountain.
- Both of my parents was very pleased with my graduation.
- Every student in my class takes part in the project.

- ① 1개
- ② 2개
- ③ 3개
- ④ 4개
- ⑤ 5개

**서술형**

[29-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29**

I would like to buy a smartphone.  
Could you show me a good one?

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**30**

Some people enjoy cooking, but other don't.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**31**

I'm going to travel to Italy by myself next month.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**서술형****고난도**

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32**

I met two friends while I was traveling.  
One is from Italy, and another is from Argentina. (1개)

**33**

Welcome to our hotel. Every member of our staff are ready to make you feel comfortable. Please make you at home, and enjoy your stay. (2개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- Will you buy the red apples or the green <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? 너는 빨간 사과를 살 거니 초록 사과를 살 거니? **Unit 01 - A**
- Would you like to have **some** snacks? 너는 간식을 좀 먹겠니? **Unit 01 - B**
- Nick has lost his wallet. He doesn't have <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ money. Nick은 지갑을 잃어버렸다. 그는 돈이 조금도 없다. **Unit 01 - B**
- **All** the students have gone home. 모든 학생들이 집에 갔다. **Unit 01 - C**
- Ray and Mike go snowboarding a lot in winter. **Both** like snowboarding. Ray와 Mike는 겨울에 스노보드를 많이 타러 간다. 둘 다 스노보드를 좋아한다. **Unit 01 - D**
- <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of the children was given a book. 각각의 아이들은 책을 한 권 받았다. **Unit 01 - E**
- <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ product in this market is on sale. 이 시장의 모든 상품은 할인 중이다. **Unit 01 - E**
- I don't like this T-shirt. Can you show me <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? 저는 이 티셔츠가 맘에 들지 않아요. 또 다른 것을 보여 줄 수 있나요? **Unit 02 - A**
- I have two pets. **One** is a hamster, and **the other** is a rabbit. 나는 애완동물이 두 마리 있다. 하나는 햄스터이고, 다른 하나는 토끼이다. **Unit 02 - B**
- **Some** like hip hop, and <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ like ballads. 어떤 사람들은 힙합을 좋아하고, 다른 어떤 사람들은 발라드를 좋아한다. **Unit 02 - C**
- Your blouse and pants match well with <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **other**. 너의 블라우스와 바지가 서로 잘 어울린다. **Unit 02 - D**
- We all should help **one another**. 우리는 모두 서로 도와야 한다. **Unit 02 - D**
- Amy was proud of <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for doing her best. Amy는 최선을 다한 것에 대해 그녀 자신이 자랑스러웠다. **Unit 03 - A**
- He <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ fixed the computer. 그가 직접 컴퓨터를 고쳤다. **Unit 03 - B**
- Take off your jacket, and **make yourself at home**. 재킷을 벗고 편히 쉬어라. **Unit 03 - C**

## Q Answers

<sup>1</sup> ones    <sup>2</sup> any    <sup>3</sup> Each    <sup>4</sup> Every    <sup>5</sup> another    <sup>6</sup> others    <sup>7</sup> each    <sup>8</sup> herself    <sup>9</sup> himself

ESSENTIAL RULES OF  
X X  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR X X

# CHAPTER 09

## 비교

형용사나 부사에 '-er', '-est' 또는  
'more', 'most'를 붙여 대상의 성질, 상태,  
수량의 정도를 비교할 수 있다.

**UNIT 01** 원급, 비교급, 최상급

**UNIT 02** 비교 구문을 이용한 표현

# 원급, 비교급, 최상급

A

**as + 원급(형용사/부사) + as:** ~만큼 …한[하게]

Bill is **as tall as** his father.

She can swim **as fast as** I can.

B

**비교급 + than:** ~보다 더 …한[하게]

Today is **hotter than** yesterday.

This pencil case is **more expensive than** that one.

① 비교급을 강조할 때는 비교급 앞에 '훨씬'의 의미를 가지는 much, a lot, even, far 등을 쓴다.

Your room is **much bigger** than mine.

C

**the + 최상급:** 가장 ~한[하게]

1 the + 최상급 + in + 장소나 범위를 나타내는 단수명사: ~안에서 가장 …한[하게]

Cream pasta is **the most popular** dish *in* this restaurant.

2 the + 최상급 + of + 비교의 대상이 되는 명사: ~중에서 가장 …한[하게]

James is **the fastest** runner of the three.

① 비교급과 최상급 만들기(규칙 변화)

일반적인 경우	- <i>(e)r</i> / - <i>(e)st</i>	fast – faster – fastest large – larger – largest
-y로 끝나는 경우	y를 i로 바꾸고 -er / -est	easy – easier – easiest
단모음 + 단자음으로 끝나는 경우	자음을 한 번 더 쓰고 -er / -est	big – bigger – biggest
-ous, -ful, -ing, -ive 등으로 끝나는 대부분의 2음절 단어와 3음절 이상의 단어인 경우	단어 앞에 more / most	famous – more famous – most famous

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- Kirk is as \_\_\_\_\_ as me.  
 ① strong      ② stronger      ③ strongest
- This cell phone is \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.  
 ① small      ② smaller      ③ smallest
- He is the \_\_\_\_\_ boy in his class.  
 ① smart      ② smarter      ③ smartest

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.13

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 The Nile River is the (longer, longest) river in the world.
- 2 My brother is (very, far) busier than me.
- 3 She can jump as (high, highest) as her older brother.
- 4 I think skiing is (exciting, more exciting) than skating.

STEP  
2

( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 I like seafood \_\_\_\_\_ than meat. (much)
- 2 Jeju Island is the \_\_\_\_\_ island in Korea. (large)
- 3 Tomorrow will be as \_\_\_\_\_ as today. (cold)
- 4 She got up \_\_\_\_\_ than me. (early)

STEP  
3

주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 The yellow bag is \$10. The red bag is \$15.  
→ The yellow bag is \_\_\_\_\_ the red one. (cheap)
- 2 I am 160 cm tall. Kevin is 165 cm tall. Ron is 168 cm tall.  
→ Ron is \_\_\_\_\_ boy of the three of us. (tall)
- 3 Sue runs 100 m in fifteen seconds. Emily also runs 100 m in fifteen seconds.  
→ Emily runs 100 m \_\_\_\_\_ Sue. (fast)

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 Hailey는 나보다 훨씬 더 힘이 세다. (much, strong)  
→ Hailey is \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 2 아빠는 엄마만큼 요리를 잘하신다. (well)  
→ Dad cooks \_\_\_\_\_ Mom.
- 3 나에게는 수학이 영어보다 더 어렵다. (difficult)  
→ For me, math is \_\_\_\_\_ English.
- 4 그녀는 그 나라에서 가장 유명한 여배우이다. (famous, actress)  
→ She is \_\_\_\_\_ in the country.

# 비교 구문을 이용한 표현

A

**배수사 + as + 원급 + as ~:** ~의 몇 배로 …한[하게](= 배수사 + 비교급 + than)

My burger is **three times as thick as** yours.

= My burger is **three times thicker than** yours.

B

**the + 비교급 ~, the + 비교급 ...:** ~하면 할수록 더 …하다

**The harder** you study, **the better** your grade will be.

C

**비교급 + and + 비교급:** 점점 더 ~한[하게]

Laptops are getting **smaller and smaller**.

It is getting **more and more difficult** to see the stars.

D

**Which/Who ~ 비교급, A or B?:** A와 B 중에서 어느 것이/누가 더 ~한가?

**Which** do you like **better**, hip hop **or** rock music?

**Who** is **taller**, Tom **or** Jimmy?

E

**one of the + 최상급 + 복수명사:** 가장 ~한 것들 중 하나

Cristiano Ronaldo is **one of the most popular soccer players** in the world.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 His hand is \_\_\_\_\_ as big as mine.  
 ① two            ② second            ③ twice
- 2 The more you practice, \_\_\_\_\_ you will be.  
 ① good            ② the good            ③ the better
- 3 It is getting colder and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 ① cold            ② colder            ③ coldest
- 4 Who came to school \_\_\_\_\_, Jane or Joe?  
 ① later            ② the later            ③ latest
- 5 She is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ painters in the world.  
 ① famous            ② more famous            ③ most famous

# PRACTICE

Q Answer Key p.14

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Beijing is (ten, ten times) as big as London.
- 2 The internet is one of the greatest (invention, inventions) in history.
- 3 The longer he waited, (the angry, the angrier) he became.
- 4 Which do you enjoy (more, most), dramas or comedies?

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 The hole is getting big and big.
- 2 Which is most difficult, math or science?
- 3 Your pizza is four as large as his.
- 4 New York is one of the more busiest cities in the world.

STEP  
3

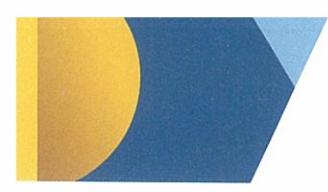
우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 낮이 점점 더 길어지고 있다. (long)  
→ The days are getting \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 그녀가 더 천천히 말할수록 나는 그녀를 더 많이 이해할 수 있었다. (slowly, much)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ she talked, \_\_\_\_\_ I could understand her.
- 3 경복궁은 한국에서 가장 아름다운 건축물 중 하나이다. (beautiful)  
→ Gyeongbokgung Palace is one of \_\_\_\_\_ buildings in Korea.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 소리가 점점 더 조용해지고 있다. (quiet)  
→ The sound is getting \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 네가 더 일찍 도착할수록 너는 더 빨리 들어갈 것이다. (early, soon)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ you arrive, \_\_\_\_\_ you will get in.
- 3 Bill과 Warren 중 누가 더 부자인가요? (rich)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_, Bill or Warren?
- 4 이 방은 내 방보다 세 배 더 크다. (three, big)  
→ This room is \_\_\_\_\_ mine.



# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그 빨간 가방은 파란 것만큼 값이 싸다. (cheap)  
→ The red bag is \_\_\_\_\_ the blue one.
- 2 날이 점점 더 따뜻해지고 있다. (get, warm)  
→ It is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 이것이 이 도시에서 가장 높은 건물이다. (tall, building)  
→ This is \_\_\_\_\_ this city.
- 4 나의 형은 나보다 돈을 훨씬 더 많이 번다. (much, money)  
→ My brother earns \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 5 오늘이 내 인생에서 가장 행복한 날 중 하나였다. (happy, day)  
→ Today was \_\_\_\_\_ of my life.
- 6 괌과 하와이 중 어느 것이 한국에 더 가까운가요? (close)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ to Korea, Guam or Hawaii?
- 7 네가 더 오래 잘수록 너는 더 피곤해질 것이다. (long, tired)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ you sleep, \_\_\_\_\_ you will be.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 셰익스피어는 역사상 가장 위대한 작가 중 한 명이다. (one, is, writers, the, of, greatest)  
→ Shakespeare \_\_\_\_\_ in history.
- 2 Paul과 Alice 중 누가 더 어립니까? (younger, Paul, is, or, who, Alice)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 3 파리는 나의 고향보다 세 배 더 크다. (three, hometown, than, my, times, bigger)  
→ Paris is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 그 소설은 점점 더 유명해졌다. (and, more, more, famous, became)  
→ The novel \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Jennifer은 나보다 옷에 돈을 두 배 더 많이 쓴다. (much money, as, me, as, twice)  
→ Jennifer spends \_\_\_\_\_ on clothes.
- 6 내가 더 높이 올라갈수록 더 추워졌다. (the, I, climbed, it, became, higher, colder, the)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_.

## C

표를 보고 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

[1-3]

City	Seoul	Tokyo	Beijing
Temperature	22°C	28°C	22°C

- 1 Tokyo is \_\_\_\_\_ Beijing. (hot)
- 2 Beijing is \_\_\_\_\_ Seoul. (cool)
- 3 Tokyo is \_\_\_\_\_ city of the three. (hot)

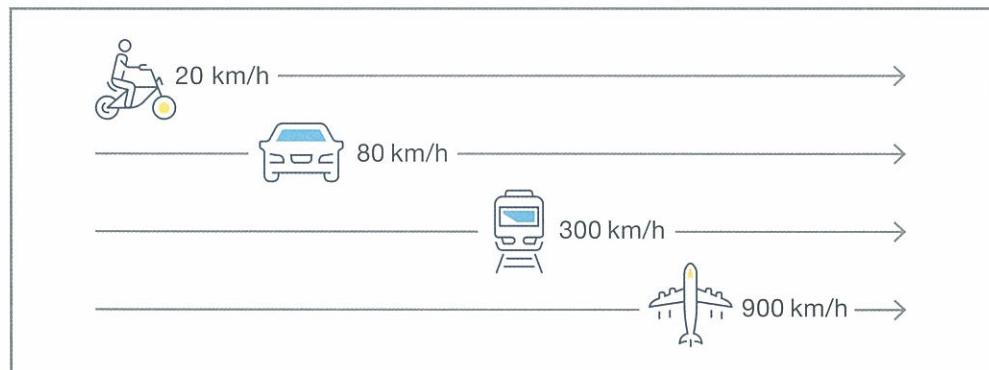
[4-6]

Dog's Name	Buddy	Coco	Nemo
Age	11	14	2
Weight	8 kg	5 kg	2 kg

- 4 Buddy and Coco have lived \_\_\_\_\_ Nemo. (far, long)
- 5 Coco is \_\_\_\_\_ pet of the three. (old)
- 6 Buddy is \_\_\_\_\_ Nemo. (four, heavy)

## D

그림을 보고 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.



- 1 The bicycle is \_\_\_\_\_ . (slow)
- 2 The car is \_\_\_\_\_ the bicycle. (four, fast)
- 3 The train is \_\_\_\_\_ the car. (fast)
- 4 The plane is \_\_\_\_\_ the train. (three, fast)

# REVIEW TEST

1 다음 중 원급, 비교급, 최상급이 잘못 연결된 것은?

- ① easy – easier – easiest
- ② thin – thinner – thinnest
- ③ weak – weaker – weakest
- ④ strong – more strong – most strong
- ⑤ early – earlier – earliest

[2–5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

2 Jim plays soccer \_\_\_\_\_ than me.

- ① well
- ② good
- ③ better
- ④ best
- ⑤ most

3 His novels are as \_\_\_\_\_ as his poems.

- ① difficult
- ② difficulter
- ③ difficultest
- ④ more difficult
- ⑤ most difficult

4 The more people have, \_\_\_\_\_ they want.

- ① much
- ② more
- ③ the more
- ④ most
- ⑤ the most

5 Who works \_\_\_\_\_, Max or Ted?

- ① the hard
- ② harder
- ③ the harder
- ④ hardest
- ⑤ the hardest

[6–7] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

6

- ① She is slimmer than me.
- ② He is the fastest runner in his class.
- ③ His smile is as bright as sunshine.
- ④ It grew bright and bright outside.
- ⑤ Which is cheaper, going by bus or by train?

7

- ① In summer, the days are longer than the nights.
- ② This car is four as expensive as that one.
- ③ The faster he spoke, the more confused I got.
- ④ His illness is getting more and more serious.
- ⑤ This is one of the most popular books in the store.

8 밑줄 친 단어를 바르게 고친 것으로 짹지어진 것은?

- The pyramid is one of the (A) amazing buildings in Egypt.
- Who is (B) most humorous, Bella or Oliver?

(A) (B)

- ① amazing ... humorouser
- ② more amazing ... humorouser
- ③ more amazing ... more humorous
- ④ most amazing ... more humorous
- ⑤ most amazing ... humorousest

**9** 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분을 바르게 고친 것은?

- ① This is the lightest box in the four.  
→ than
- ② This camera is heavy than that one.  
→ heaviest
- ③ She is as richest as my uncle.  
→ richer
- ④ Which is smaller, your dog and his dog?  
→ or
- ⑤ Picasso is one of the more famous painters in history. → famous

## 서술형

**13** 대화를 읽고 비교급을 이용하여 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- A: How old are you?  
B: I'm fifteen years old. How about you?  
A: I am \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
I'm thirteen years old.

## 서술형

## 빈출

[10-12] 주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**10**

- Bill spends \$30 a week.
- Sam spends \$10 a week.

→ Bill spends \_\_\_\_\_  
Sam. (three, much)

**11**

- It is 32°C in Paris.
- It is 32°C in Rome too.

→ It is \_\_\_\_\_ in Rome  
as it is in Paris. (hot)

**12**

- Mike got a 90 on the math test.
- Harry got a 70 on the math test.
- Dean got an 85 on the math test.

→ Mike got \_\_\_\_\_  
score of the three. (high)

**14** 빈칸에 들어갈 말로 알맞지 않은 것은?

She is \_\_\_\_\_ taller than her brother.

- |         |        |        |
|---------|--------|--------|
| ① even  | ② far  | ③ much |
| ④ a lot | ⑤ very |        |

**15** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것은?

- ① My brother is twice as old as me.
- ② The rain grew heavy and heavier.
- ③ Tom's cat is very bigger than my cat.
- ④ The more you smile, more people like you.
- ⑤ He is one of the smartest boy in the school.

## 서술형

**16** 표를 보고 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 비교급 문장을 완성하시오.

Fruit	Price
an orange	\$1.50
an apple	\$2.00

→ An orange is \_\_\_\_\_ an apple. (cheap)

**서술형**

**17** 대화를 읽고 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

A: The weather is so nice today.

B: Yeah. As the weather is nicer, I feel better than yesterday.

A: Me too.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ the weather is,  
\_\_\_\_\_ they feel. (nice, good)

**빈출**

**18** 표의 내용과 일치하지 않는 것은?

Name	Height	Weight
Jina	158 cm	48 kg
Hani	155 cm	50 kg
Mina	162 cm	52 kg

- ① Jina is taller than Hani.
- ② Mina is lighter than Hani.
- ③ Hani is heavier than Jina.
- ④ Mina is the tallest of the three.
- ⑤ Hani is the shortest of the three.

**21** 너는 영화나 뮤지컬 중 어느 것을 더 좋아하니?  
(much)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, movies or  
musicals?

**22** 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분이 잘못된 것은?

- ① He became more and more confident.
- ② It snowed much more than last year.
- ③ His feet are bigger than mine.
- ④ The more you eat, the more weight you'll gain.
- ⑤ I play the flute as better as her.

**서술형**

**23** 우리말과 일치하도록 주어진 조건에 맞게 문장을 완성하시오.

그 교과서는 공책보다 두 배 더 두껍다.

〈조건〉 1. thick, the notebook, twice를 이용  
할 것  
2. 원급을 이용할 것

→ The textbook \_\_\_\_\_

**서술형**

[19-21] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**19** 위로 올라갈수록 점점 더 추워진다. (high, cold)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ you go, \_\_\_\_\_  
it gets.

[24-25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

**24** 그의 영어는 점점 더 나아지고 있다.

(is, better, his, and, better, English, getting)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

**25** Carter는 세계에서 가장 유명한 마술사 중 한 명이다.  
(the, is, famous, in, Carter, most, of, world, magicians, the, one)

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

**20** 이 집은 저 집보다 다섯 배나 더 비싸다.  
(expensive)

→ This house is \_\_\_\_\_  
that house.

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① She doesn't study as harder as I do.
- ② Where is nearest bus stop?
- ③ He can speak English better than me.
- ④ I feel much best than last week.
- ⑤ My sister is one of the most popular girls in her school.

**서술형**

[29-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** The fire is growing large and large.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. My eyesight is getting worse and worse.
- b. This tower is twice as taller as the building.
- c. This desert is one of the driest places on Earth.
- d. I don't exercise as often as my brothers do.
- e. The farthest you go, the hardest it is to return.

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| ① a, b, c | ② a, c, d |
| ③ a, d, e | ④ b, c, e |
| ⑤ b, d, e |           |

**고난도**

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- Today is as hottest as yesterday.
- China is three times larger than India.
- The more my daughter laughs, the happier I am.
- Pecan pie is the more popular dessert in this restaurant.
- She is one of the greatest artist in the 20th century.

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| ① 1개 | ② 2개 | ③ 3개 |
| ④ 4개 | ⑤ 5개 |      |

**서술형** **고난도**

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** My younger brother asks me a lot of questions. Today's question was much more difficult as others. (1개)

**33** There are many ways to go to Jeju Island. Taking a ship is cheapest way, but taking an airplane is fast than taking a ship. (2개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- Bill is **as tall as** his father. Bill은 그의 아버지만큼 키가 크다. **Unit 01 - A**
- She can swim <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I can. 그녀는 나만큼 빠르게 수영할 수 있다. **Unit 01 - A**
- Today is <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. 오늘은 어제보다 더 덥다. **Unit 01 - B**
- This pencil case is <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **than** that one. 이 필통이 저것보다 더 비싸다. **Unit 01 - B**
- Cream pasta is <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ dish in this restaurant.  
크림 파스타는 이 레스토랑에서 가장 인기 있는 음식이다. **Unit 01 - C**
- James is <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ runner of the three.  
James는 그 셋 중에서 가장 빠른 주자이다. **Unit 01 - C**
- My burger is <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **as** yours. 내 버거는 네 것보다 세 배 더 두껍다. **Unit 02 - A**
- <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you study, \_\_\_\_\_ your grade will be.  
네가 더 열심히 공부하면 할수록 네 성적은 더 좋아질 것이다. **Unit 02 - B**
- Laptops are getting **smaller and smaller**. 노트북이 점점 더 작아지고 있다. **Unit 02 - C**
- It is getting <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **difficult** to see the stars.  
별을 보는 것이 점점 더 어려워지고 있다. **Unit 02 - C**
- <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ do you like **better**, hip hop \_\_\_\_\_ rock music?  
너는 힙합과 록 음악 중에서 어느 것이 더 좋니? **Unit 02 - D**
- **Who** is **taller**, Tom **or** Jimmy? Tom과 Jimmy 중에서 누가 더 키가 크니? **Unit 02 - D**
- Cristiano Ronaldo is **one of the** <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **soccer** \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.  
Cristiano Ronaldo는 세계에서 가장 인기 있는 축구 선수 중 한 명이다. **Unit 02 - E**

## Q Answers

- 1 as fast as    2 hotter than    3 more expensive    4 the most popular    5 the fastest
- 6 three times as thick    7 The harder, the better    8 more and more    9 Which, or
- 10 most popular, players

ESSENTIAL RULES OF  
X ENGLISH GRAMMAR X

# CHAPTER 10



## 접속사

접속사는 단어와 단어, 구와 구, 절과 절을  
연결한다.

**UNIT 01** 시간, 이유, 결과의 접속사

**UNIT 02** 조건, 양보의 접속사 /  
명령문 + and, or ~

# 시간, 이유, 결과의 접속사

A

## 시간을 나타내는 접속사

- 1 when / as: ~할 때

I was shy **when** I was young.

**As** I looked at her, she smiled brightly.

- 2 while: ~하는 동안

I drank a cup of tea **while** I was reading a novel.

① **while**은 ‘~인 반면에’의 의미로 사용되기도 한다.

**While** I like watching sports, he likes playing them.

- 3 after / before: ~한 후에 / ~하기 전에

You'll feel better **after** you get some rest.

Let's buy some popcorn **before** we watch the movie.

- 4 until[till]: ~(할 때)까지

I will wait here **until** he comes back.

① 시간의 부사절에서는 현재시제가 미래시제를 대신한다.

I'll call you when I **arrive** at the airport. (~~will arrive~~)

B

## 이유, 결과를 나타내는 접속사

- 1 because: ~이기 때문에

I wore a coat **because** the weather was cold.

- 2 as / since: ~이기 때문에(이유가 이미 알려졌을 때 주로 사용)

**As[Since]** he waited for too long, he was angry.

- 3 so: 그래서

I was late, **so** I took a taxi.

- 4 so ~ that ...: 매우[너무] ~해서 …하다

This soup is **so** hot **that** I can't eat it now.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 It was snowing \_\_\_\_\_ I got up in the morning.

Ⓐ because Ⓑ when Ⓒ so

- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ he told a lie to me, I don't trust him anymore.

Ⓐ As Ⓑ When Ⓒ While

- 3 This car is \_\_\_\_\_ expensive that I can't buy it.

Ⓐ and Ⓑ but Ⓒ so

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.15

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 (As, Until) I was really tired, I went to bed early.
- 2 (While, Since) you were sleeping, he came to see you.
- 3 The small town was really beautiful, (since, so) I wanted to stay there.
- 4 She ran so fast (as, that) I couldn't keep up.
- 5 I will finish my homework before the TV show (will start, starts).

STEP  
2

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기              while        so        that        since        before

- 1 Wash your face \_\_\_\_\_ you have breakfast.
- 2 I was ill, \_\_\_\_\_ I couldn't attend the meeting.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ you're busy, I'll call you later.
- 4 I was cooking \_\_\_\_\_ she was reading a newspaper.
- 5 The film was so interesting \_\_\_\_\_ I watched it several times.

STEP  
3

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 The subway was so crowded as I couldn't take it.
- 2 Don't go out until I will tell you to.
- 3 While she was doing the dishes, I clean the living room.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 저녁을 먹고 나서 나는 산책하러 나갔다. (have dinner)  
→ I went out for a walk \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 네가 준비가 될 때까지 밖에서 기다리겠다. (be ready)  
→ I will wait outside \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 그는 하루 종일 일해서 매우 피곤했다. (work)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ all day, he was very tired.
- 4 나갈 때, 문 잠그는 것을 잊지 마라. (leave)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_, don't forget to lock the door.
- 5 너무 추워서 그들은 밖에 나가지 않았다. (cold)  
→ It was \_\_\_\_\_ they didn't go outside.

# 조건, 양보의 접속사 / 명령문 + and, or ~

A

## 조건을 나타내는 접속사

1 if: ~한다면, ~라면

If you want a good grade, you have to study hard.

2 unless: 만약 ~하지 않으면(= if ~ not)

**Unless** you call your mom now, she will be very angry.

= If you don't call your mom now, ...

① 조건을 나타내는 부사절에서는 현재시제가 미래시제를 대신한다.

We will have a big party if we **win** the game. (will-win)

B

## 양보를 나타내는 접속사

though[although]: ~에도 불구하고, 비록 ~지만

**Though** it rained, the soccer game was not canceled.

C

## 명령문 + and, or ~

1 명령문, and ~: ~해라, 그러면 …할 것이다

Take the earliest train, **and** you will get there on time.

= If you take the earliest train, you ...

2 명령문, or ~: ~해라, 그러지 않으면 …할 것이다

Finish your homework, **or** you can't play the game.

= **Unless** you finish your homework, you ...

= If you don't finish your homework, you ...

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 \_\_\_\_\_ you get up early, you can see the sunrise.

- Ⓐ If Ⓑ Unless Ⓒ Though

2 \_\_\_\_\_ she was poor, she tried to help others.

- Ⓐ If Ⓑ And Ⓒ Although

3 Push this red button, \_\_\_\_\_ the box will open.

- Ⓐ and Ⓑ but Ⓒ if

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.15

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 (Though, If) he is a hundred years old, he is very healthy.
- 2 (If, Unless) you have any questions, ask me anytime.
- 3 (If, Unless) you love your work, you won't succeed.
- 4 Take this bus, (and, or) you'll get to the library.

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 If I will miss the last train, I will take a taxi.
- 2 Unless we don't leave now, we'll miss the movie.
- 3 Followed the rules, or you'll be in trouble.
- 4 Unless you will study hard, you'll regret it someday.

STEP  
3

주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 접속사를 쓰시오.

- 1 If you don't make a reservation, you won't get a table.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ you make a reservation, you won't get a table.
- 2 I tried my best, but I couldn't win the prize.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ I tried my best, I couldn't win the prize.
- 3 If you read a lot of books, you will be wiser.  
→ Read a lot of books, \_\_\_\_\_ you will be wiser.
- 4 Unless you are careful with that knife, you will get hurt.  
→ Be careful with that knife, \_\_\_\_\_ you will get hurt.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 Jenny를 보면, 나에게 전화하라고 말해라. (see)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_, tell her to call me.
- 2 네가 조용히 하지 않으면, 아기가 깨 것이다. (unless, be quiet)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_, the baby will wake up.
- 3 비록 나는 피곤했지만, 그 일을 제시간에 마쳤다. (tired)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_, I finished the work on time.
- 4 서둘러라, 그러지 않으면 너는 학교에 늦을 것이다. (be)  
→ Hurry up, \_\_\_\_\_ late for school.

# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 네가 전화하기 전에 우리는 점심을 먹었다. (call)

→ We had lunch \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 만일 네가 네 계획을 바꾸면, 나에게 알려라. (change, plans)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, let me know.

- 3 어제는 그의 생일이어서 나는 그에게 선물을 주었다. (give, a present)

→ It was his birthday yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_ to him.

- 4 그 꿈은 너무 생생해서 나는 그것을 매우 잘 기억할 수 있었다. (vivid, remember)

→ The dream was \_\_\_\_\_ it very well.

- 5 너의 수업이 끝날 때까지 기다리겠다. (class, be over)

→ I will wait \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 나는 베트남을 여행하는 동안 즐거운 시간을 보냈다. (travel)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam, I had a great time.

- 7 나에게 사실을 말해라, 그러면 내가 너를 용서해 줄 것이다. (forgive)

→ Tell me the truth, \_\_\_\_\_.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 나는 그 약을 먹었지만, 여전히 몸이 좋지 않다. (the, took, I, although, medicine)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, I'm still not feeling well.

- 2 내가 그 방에 들어가자, 모든 사람이 일어났다. (I, entered, as, room, everyone, the)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ stood up.

- 3 일요일이었기 때문에 그 가게는 문을 닫았다. (shop, was, Sunday, it, was, since, the)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ closed.

- 4 점심을 다 먹은 후 그는 설거지를 할 것이다. (finishes, wash, lunch, he, will, he, after)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes.

- 5 영수증을 가져오지 않으면, 너는 환불을 받을 수 없다. (you, receipt, unless, bring, can't, the, you)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ get a refund.

- 6 네 코트를 입어라, 그러지 않으면 감기에 걸릴 것이다. (will, or, coat, put on, you, your)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ catch a cold.

## C

자연스러운 문장이 되도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

**보기**  
say sorry to him  
see this photo  
stayed at home all day

moved to Paris  
taste better  
was cooking in the kitchen

- 1 I was sick, so I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Ron lived in Seoul before he \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 They'll be surprised if they \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Add more salt into the soup, and it'll \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Unless you \_\_\_\_\_, he won't talk to you again.
- 6 While my aunt \_\_\_\_\_, I took care of her baby.

## D

그림을 보고 보기1에 주어진 접속사와 보기2에 주어진 표현을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.



보기 1

before

that

until

when

보기 2

cry a lot

stop raining

watch the movie

get out of the movie theater

- 1 Mia and I bought some popcorn and drinks \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 The movie was so touching \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_, it suddenly started to rain.
- 4 As we didn't have an umbrella, we waited \_\_\_\_\_.

# REVIEW TEST

[1-5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 I listened to the radio \_\_\_\_\_ I was driving to work.

- ① so
- ② that
- ③ though
- ④ while
- ⑤ if

2 \_\_\_\_\_ she didn't understand the book well, she kept reading it.

- ① That
- ② Though
- ③ Unless
- ④ When
- ⑤ If

3 It was too late, \_\_\_\_\_ I couldn't call you.

- ① while
- ② so
- ③ as
- ④ since
- ⑤ because

4 This cat is so cute \_\_\_\_\_ I can't stop looking at him.

- ① as
- ② if
- ③ that
- ④ while
- ⑤ although

5 Visit our website, \_\_\_\_\_ you'll get useful information.

- ① and
- ② or
- ③ but
- ④ if
- ⑤ unless

6 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분이 자연스럽지 않은 것은?

- ① Though I didn't have money, I went shopping.
- ② As there was a lot of traffic, she was late.
- ③ He completed his painting after he died.
- ④ When you go abroad, you need a passport.
- ⑤ The weather is so hot that I can't go outside.

7 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것은?

- ① Though he is thin, he is very strong.
- ② Ask her, and you'll get the answer.
- ③ If he will tell a lie, he will be punished.
- ④ Please help me when you finish your work.
- ⑤ As I didn't know what to say, I said nothing.

8 세 문장의 의미가 비슷하도록 할 때, 빈칸에 들어갈 말이 순서대로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

Study hard, or you will fail the exam.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ you don't study hard,  
you will fail the exam.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ you study hard, you will  
fail the exam.

- ① If – Though
- ② When – Unless
- ③ Unless – When
- ④ If – Unless
- ⑤ When – Although

## 빈출

**9** 밑줄 친 접속사의 의미가 나머지 넷과 다른 것은?

- ① As it rained, the picnic was canceled.
- ② As I entered the house, it was dark.
- ③ As he lives near me, I often meet him.
- ④ As Nick had a headache, he stayed in bed.
- ⑤ As the box was heavy, I couldn't move it.

**10** 빈칸에 들어갈 접속사가 나머지 넷과 다른 것은?

- ① \_\_\_\_\_ you take a nap, you'll feel better.
- ② \_\_\_\_\_ you need my help, tell me anytime.
- ③ \_\_\_\_\_ you don't get up, you can't see him.
- ④ \_\_\_\_\_ it snows tomorrow, I won't drive my car.
- ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_ you set the alarm, you won't be able to wake up at seven.

## 서술형

[11-13] 주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

**11** I opened the door after I knocked.

→ I knocked \_\_\_\_\_ I opened the door.

**12** If you turn left, you'll see the art gallery.

→ Turn left, \_\_\_\_\_ you'll see the art gallery.

**13** Hannah enjoys iced tea, but I like hot tea.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ Hannah enjoys iced tea, I like hot tea.

**14** 다음 우리말을 영어로 잘못 옮긴 것은?

그 케이크는 맛있어서 많은 사람들이 좋아한다.

- ① The cake is delicious, so many people love it.
- ② As the cake is delicious, many people love it.
- ③ Since the cake is delicious, many people love it.
- ④ Because the cake is delicious, many people love it.
- ⑤ Though the cake is delicious, many people love it.

## 서술형

[15-16] 밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

**15** A: It is raining.

B: It looks like a shower. It'll stop soon.

Let's wait here until it will stop.

A: Okay.

**16** A: My computer is broken. What should I do?

B: Ask Timmy. He knows computers well. Unless he is not busy, he will be able to help you.

A: Thanks.

**고난도**

**17** 다음 중 어느 빈칸에도 들어갈 수 없는 것은?

Michael left the office late a  
he had a lot of work. It was nearly  
midnight b he arrived home.  
He watched a movie c it  
was late. The next morning, he was so  
tired d he missed his alarm!

- ① that
- ② unless
- ③ because
- ④ though
- ⑤ when

**18** 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분을 바르게 고친 것은?

- ① You can come to my new house after  
I will move. → will be moving
- ② Daisy was so thirsty than she drank  
juice. → because
- ③ Go travel, or you will experience  
many things. → that
- ④ If she will see your gift, she'll be  
amazed. → sees
- ⑤ As I looked everywhere, I couldn't  
find my key. → Since

**서술형**

[21-22] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**21** 나는 내 꿈이 이루어질 때까지 포기하지 않을 것이다.  
(dream, come true)

→ I will never give up \_\_\_\_\_.

**22** 조심해라, 그러지 않으면 너는 실수를 저지를 것이다.  
(make a mistake)

→ Be careful, \_\_\_\_\_.

**서술형**

[23-25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

**23** Jimmy가 돌아온 후에 함께 저녁을 먹자.  
(comes, Jimmy, dinner, together, have, after, back)

→ Let's \_\_\_\_\_.

**서술형**

[19-20] 빈칸에 공통으로 들어갈 접속사를 쓰시오.

- 19** • \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't have breakfast,  
I'm very hungry.  
• \_\_\_\_\_ I looked out the window,  
the sun started to rise.

**24** 그녀의 아들이 아팠기 때문에 그녀는 그가 걱정되었 다.  
(was, son, worried, her, was, sick, she, since)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ about him.

- 20** • Brian read a magazine \_\_\_\_\_  
he was waiting.  
• \_\_\_\_\_ I like listening to music,  
he likes singing.

**25** 그 아이는 너무 무서워서 소리를 질렀다.  
(scared, that, so, screamed, he)

→ The kid was \_\_\_\_\_.

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① I stirred the soup until it boiled.
- ② We will play outside if it won't rain tomorrow.
- ③ Unless you don't get up early, you'll be late.
- ④ I was so angry that I hung up the phone.
- ⑤ Drink enough water, and you'll get healthier.

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. Unless you take this bus, you won't arrive on time.
- b. Kate skipped lunch since she was very busy.
- c. Review today's lesson, and you can't do well on the quiz tomorrow.
- d. The weather was too hot that I wore shorts.
- e. While Dad watched a baseball game, I played computer games.

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| ① a, b, c | ② a, b, d |
| ③ a, b, e | ④ b, c, e |
| ⑤ b, d, e |           |

**고난도**

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- Don't open your eyes until I tell you.
- As I missed Emily, I didn't keep in touch with her.
- Unless you eat something now, you will be hungry later.
- Finish your vegetables, and I will give you some dessert.
- Though it rained, the tennis match was canceled.

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| ① 1개 | ② 2개 | ③ 3개 |
| ④ 4개 | ⑤ 5개 |      |

**서술형**

[29-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** Jacob studied so hard that he got a scholarship.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**30** I will work on my homework until my mom will come back.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**31** He looked very hungry, but we gave him something to eat.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**서술형****고난도**

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** Although I flipped the switch, the light didn't turn on. The room was very dark that I couldn't see anything. (1개)

**33** There was a huge desk in front of the door, so I almost fell over it when I came in. If we move it, someone will get hurt. (1개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- I was shy **when** I was young. 나는 어렸을 때 수줍음이 많았다. **Unit 01 - A**
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ I looked at her, she smiled brightly.  
내가 그녀를 보았을 때 그녀는 환하게 웃었다. **Unit 01 - A**
- I drank a cup of tea **while** I was reading a novel. 나는 소설을 읽는 동안 차 한 잔을 마셨다. **Unit 01 - A**
- You'll feel better **after** you get some rest. 너는 휴식을 좀 취한 후에 더 나아질 것이다. **Unit 01 - A**
- Let's buy some popcorn **before** we watch the movie.  
우리 영화를 보기 전에 팝콘을 좀 사자. **Unit 01 - A**
- I will wait here 2 \_\_\_\_\_ he comes back.  
나는 그가 돌아올 때까지 여기서 기다릴 것이다. **Unit 01 - A**
- I wore a coat **because** the weather was cold. 날씨가 추웠기 때문에 나는 코트를 입었다. **Unit 01 - B**
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ he waited for too long, he was angry.  
그는 너무 오래 기다렸기 때문에 화가 났다. **Unit 01 - B**
- I was late, 4 \_\_\_\_\_ I took a taxi. 나는 늦어서 택시를 탔다. **Unit 01 - B**
- This soup is 5 \_\_\_\_\_ hot 6 \_\_\_\_\_ I can't eat it now.  
이 수프는 너무 뜨거워서 나는 그것을 지금 먹을 수 없다. **Unit 01 - B**
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ you want a good grade, you have to study hard.  
네가 좋은 성적을 원한다면, 너는 열심히 공부해야 한다. **Unit 02 - A**
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ you call your mom now, she will be very angry.  
네가 지금 너희 엄마에게 전화하지 않으면, 그녀는 매우 화가 날 것이다. **Unit 02 - A**
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ it rained, the soccer game was not canceled.  
비가 왔음에도 불구하고, 그 축구 경기는 취소되지 않았다. **Unit 02 - B**
- Take the earliest train, 9 \_\_\_\_\_ you will get there on time.  
가장 이른 기차를 타라, 그러면 너는 그곳에 제시간에 도착할 것이다. **Unit 02 - C**
- Finish your homework, 10 \_\_\_\_\_ you can't play the game.  
숙제를 끝내라, 그러지 않으면 너는 게임을 할 수 없다. **Unit 02 - C**

## Q Answers

- 1 As[When] 2 until[till] 3 As[Since, Because] 4 so 5 so, that 6 If 7 Unless  
8 Though[Although] 9 and 10 or



# CHAPTER 11

## 관계사

대명사 또는 부사의 역할을 하면서 절을

이끌어 앞의 명사나 대명사에 연결하는 말로,

관계대명사와 관계부사가 있다.

**UNIT 01** 관계대명사

**UNIT 02** 관계대명사 that, what /  
관계대명사의 생략

**UNIT 03** 관계부사

# 관계대명사

「접속사 + 대명사」 역할을 하며, 관계대명사가 이끄는 절은 앞의 명사(선행사)를 수식한다.

I have a friend. + He dances very well.

→ I have a friend [who dances very well].

선행사	주격	목적격	소유격
사람	who	who(m)	whose
사물, 동물	which	which	whose

## A

## 주격 관계대명사 who, which

I know a girl **who** wants to be a news reporter. <선행사가 사람>

← I know a girl. + She wants to be a news reporter.

Mason often visits blogs **which** have movie reviews. <선행사가 사물>

← Mason often visits blogs. + They have movie reviews.

## B

## 목적격 관계대명사 who(m), which

I have an old friend **who(m)** I've known for ten years. <선행사가 사람>

← I have an old friend. + I've known her for ten years.

*The coupon* **which** you have is out of date. <선행사가 사물>

← The coupon is out of date. + You have it.

## C

## 소유격 관계대명사 whose

I like the boy **whose** hair is brown. <선행사가 사람>

← I like the boy. + His hair is brown.

In Europe, there are many houses **whose** roofs are red. <선행사가 사물>

← In Europe, there are many houses. + Their roofs are red.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 I have an aunt \_\_\_\_\_ lives in Paris.

- Ⓐ who Ⓑ whom Ⓒ whose

2 This is the piano \_\_\_\_\_ Dad gave to me.

- Ⓐ whom Ⓑ whose Ⓒ which

3 Look at the dog \_\_\_\_\_ tail is very fluffy.

- Ⓐ who Ⓑ whom Ⓒ whose

## PLUS : 관계대명사 who vs. 의문사 who

- 관계대명사 who가 이끄는 절은 선행사를 수식한다.

I know a boy [who is good at cooking].

- 의문사 who는 '누가'의 의미이다.

I know **who** is good at cooking.

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.16

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I read a book (which, whose) author is unknown.
- 2 Ben is my neighbor (who, which) works in a hospital.
- 3 Jenny read an article (who, which) was written by her friend.
- 4 Picasso is the famous painter (whose, whom) I like the most.

STEP  
2

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

보기 who whom which whose

- 1 She knows a guy \_\_\_\_\_ job is selling cars.
- 2 I'll show you the laptop \_\_\_\_\_ I bought yesterday.
- 3 He is a baker \_\_\_\_\_ makes the best apple pie in the world.
- 4 I remember the boy \_\_\_\_\_ we saw at the bookstore yesterday.

STEP  
3

다음 두 문장을 관계대명사를 이용하여 한 문장으로 쓰시오.

- 1 Yesterday, I met a girl. + She is from Mexico.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 I want to buy a smartphone. + Its screen is large.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Mr. Lee is a teacher. + A lot of students respect him.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 The dress is very beautiful. + The actress is wearing it.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 그는 자기 어머니에 관한 소설을 썼다. (be)

→ He wrote a novel \_\_\_\_\_ about his mother.

- 2 나는 털이 모두 까만 고양이가 한 마리 있다. (fur)

→ I have a cat \_\_\_\_\_ all black.

- 3 나는 인도에 사는 사촌에게 선물을 보냈다. (live)

→ I sent a present to my cousin \_\_\_\_\_ in India.

- 4 나는 Lily가 좋아하는 그 소년을 본 적이 없다. (like)

→ I haven't seen the boy \_\_\_\_\_.

# 관계대명사 that, what / 관계대명사의 생략

## A

## 관계대명사 that

1 선행사의 종류에 상관없이 주격 혹은 목적격 관계대명사로 쓸 수 있다.

He is the football player **that[who(m)]** I like the most.

Jim wants to go to the university **that[which]** is in Oxford.

2 선행사가 사람과 사물[동물]이거나, 최상급, 서수, the very, the same, the last 등의 수식을 받는 경우, 또는 -thing으로 끝나는 단어 등을 포함하는 경우에는 주로 관계대명사 that을 쓴다.

The drama is about *an old man and a dog* **that** lived on an island.

Jane is wearing *the same dress* **that** I'm wearing.

Buy *anything* **that** you want.

## B

## 관계대명사 what

what은 선행사를 포함하는 관계대명사로서, the thing(s) that[which]의 의미이다.

I didn't hear **what** you just said. Could you repeat it?

= the thing that[which]

## C

## 관계대명사의 생략

1 목적격 관계대명사(who(m), which, that)는 생략이 가능하다.

My father bought me the sneakers (**that[which]**) I wanted to have.

This is the house (**that[which]**) the singer lives *in*.

① 목적격 관계대명사절 끝의 전치사는 관계대명사 앞에 둘 수 있는데, 이때는 관계대명사 that을 쓰거나 생략할 수 없다.

This is the house *in which* the singer lives.

~~This is the house in that the singer lives.~~

~~This is the house in the singer lives.~~

2 「주격 관계대명사 + be동사」는 뒤에 분사구나 형용사구가 올 때 생략이 가능하다.

I know the girl (**who[that]** *is*) playing the drums on the stage.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 The purse \_\_\_\_\_ I lost was black.

- Ⓐ who Ⓑ that Ⓒ what

2 Ron is the only student \_\_\_\_\_ speaks Spanish in class.

- Ⓐ whom Ⓑ that Ⓒ what

3 \_\_\_\_\_ I really want to do now is sleep.

- Ⓐ Which Ⓑ That Ⓒ What

4 The boy \_\_\_\_\_ glasses is my cousin.

- Ⓐ wears Ⓑ wearing Ⓒ is wearing

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.16

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I like movies (that, what) have happy endings.
- 2 There were a lot of kids (playing, were playing) soccer.
- 3 Listening to rock music is (that, what) I like best.
- 4 It is a difficult question (that, what) no one can answer.
- 5 This is the restaurant in (which, that) I first saw the girl.

STEP  
2

다음 문장에서 생략할 수 있는 부분을 찾아 쓰시오. (생략할 수 있는 부분이 없으면 X표 하시오.)

- 1 This is a film that was made by my favorite director.
- 2 I don't like people that tell lies to me.
- 3 The woman to whom Amy is talking is her teacher.
- 4 This is the job that no one wants to do.
- 5 I saw an old lady whose hair was all white.

STEP  
3

빈칸에 that과 what 중 알맞은 것을 쓰시오.

- 1 Jake is the only person \_\_\_\_\_ can help you.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ is important in my life is my family.
- 3 These are the cookies \_\_\_\_\_ my friend made for me.
- 4 This is \_\_\_\_\_ I bought for my grandfather's birthday.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 브라질에서 쓰이는 언어는 무엇입니까? (Brazil, language, spoken, in, the)  
→ What is \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 내가 좋아하는 과목은 수학과 과학이다. (subjects, I, the, like)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ are math and science.
- 3 그녀가 크리스마스에 원하는 것은 인형이다. (what, Christmas, for, wants, she)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ is a doll.
- 4 Ian이 모임 장소에 도착했던 첫 번째 사람이었다. (was, the, person, that, arrived, first)  
→ Ian \_\_\_\_\_ at the meeting place.

# 관계부사

「접속사 + 부사」의 역할을 하는 말로, 관계부사가 이끄는 절이 형용사처럼 선행사를 수식한다.

① 관계부사는 「전치사 + 관계대명사」로 바꿔 쓸 수 있다.

when	at/on/in/during which	why	for which
where	at/on/in/to which	how	the way (in which)

A

**when:** 시간 (선행사: the time, the day, the year 등)

I can't wait for the day when my vacation starts.  
= on which

→ I can't wait for the day. + My vacation starts on that day.

B

**where:** 장소 (선행사: the place, the city, the country 등)

I'm looking for the place where I will stay in Italy.  
= at which

→ I'm looking for the place. + I will stay at the place in Italy.

C

**why:** 이유 (선행사: the reason)

I can't tell you the reason why I love her so much.  
= for which

→ I can't tell you the reason. + I love her so much for that reason.

D

**how:** 방법 (선행사: the way)

선행사 the way와 관계부사 how는 함께 쓰지 않고 둘 중 하나만 사용한다.

This is the way how the story ends.

This is how the story ends.  
= the way in which

= This is the way the story ends.

→ This is the way. + The story ends in this way.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Do you remember the day \_\_\_\_\_ we first met?  
 Ⓐ when Ⓑ where Ⓒ why
- 2 Austria is a country \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of famous musicians were born.  
 Ⓐ when Ⓑ where Ⓒ why
- 3 It's rush hour. That is the reason \_\_\_\_\_ I want to leave early.  
 Ⓐ where Ⓑ why Ⓒ how
- 4 I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ he behaves.  
 Ⓐ when Ⓑ why Ⓒ how

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.17

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Tell me the place (when, where) you saw my dog.
- 2 This is (how, what) I made the seafood spaghetti.
- 3 Molly may know the reason (how, why) Harper quit her job.
- 4 It's two o'clock. This is the time (when, why) I always feel sleepy.

STEP  
2

빈칸에 알맞은 관계부사를 쓰시오.

- 1 Shanghai is the city \_\_\_\_\_ I traveled last summer.
- 2 Do you know the reason \_\_\_\_\_ this movie is so popular?
- 3 I remember the exact date \_\_\_\_\_ Jake visited my house.
- 4 I'm worried about \_\_\_\_\_ he treats his child.

STEP  
3

다음 두 문장을 관계부사를 이용하여 한 문장으로 쓰시오.

- 1 This is the elementary school. + I used to go to the school.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 That is the way. + Harry solved the problem in that way.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Liz told me the reason. + She left the party early for that reason.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 April 1 is the day. + People play jokes on that day.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 뮤지컬이 시작하는 시간을 아니? (starts, when, time, the, musical, the)

→ Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?

- 2 그는 나에게 자신이 프랑스어를 공부하는 이유를 말해주었다. (reason, studied, he, the, French, why)

→ He told me \_\_\_\_\_ .

- 3 나는 네가 네 치마를 샀던 가게에 갈 거야. (where, your, the, you, skirt, shop, bought)

→ I'll go to \_\_\_\_\_ .

# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 Jessica는 나를 잘 아는 오랜 친구이다. (old, know)

→ Jessica is an \_\_\_\_\_ me well.

- 2 나는 아버지가 유명한 작곡가인 한 남자를 만날 것이다. (famous, composer)

→ I'll meet a guy \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 그 집은 큰 정원이 있다. 그곳이 내가 찾고 있는 바로 그 집이다. (the very, look for)

→ The house has a big garden. It is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 Ted는 그가 어제 봤던 뮤지컬에 대해 나에게 말해 줬다. (see)

→ Ted told me about the musical \_\_\_\_\_.

- 5 Eric은 서울에서 일을 구했다. 그것이 그가 그곳으로 이사했던 이유이다. (reason, move)

→ Eric got a job in Seoul. That is \_\_\_\_\_ there.

- 6 이것이 내가 그 포테이토 피자를 만들었던 방법이다. (make, potato pizza)

→ This is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 7 내가 사랑에 빠졌던 그 소녀는 꽃을 좋아했다. (fall in love with)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ liked flowers.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 냉장고 안에 있는 것은 무엇이든 마셔도 된다. (you, that, can, anything, is, drink)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ in the refrigerator.

- 2 나는 내가 더 이상 신지 않는 신발을 버릴 것이다. (I, anymore, the, don't, shoes, wear, throw away)

→ I will \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 내일은 2학기가 시작하는 날이다. (the, begins, day, when, the, semester, second)

→ Tomorrow is \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 이곳이 내가 매일 운동하는 그 체육관이다. (gym, exercise, I, where, the, is, this)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ every day.

- 5 저기서 커피를 마시고 있는 사람이 나의 부인이다. (drinking, there, the, coffee, over, person)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ is my wife.

- 6 Lena의 미소는 아름답다. 그것이 내가 그녀에 대해 좋아하는 것이다. (like, about, what, I, her)

→ Lena's smile is beautiful. That's \_\_\_\_\_.

## C

자연스러운 문장이 되도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 보기에서 골라 쓰시오. (단, 한 번씩만 쓸 것)

## [1-4]

보기	that I didn't agree with which has a lot of vitamin C	whose job is to design clothes that my friend recommended
----	--	--

- 1 I often eat fruit \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Ann gave an opinion \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I watched the movie \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I have a friend \_\_\_\_\_.

## [5-8]

보기	how I got my job where we can eat Greek food	when the car accident happened why I was depressed yesterday
----	---	---

- 5 This is the restaurant \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 The sad movie was the reason \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 I uploaded my resume online. That is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 I still remember the day \_\_\_\_\_.

## D

그림을 보고 보기 1에 주어진 관계사와 보기 2에 주어진 표현을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.



보기 1	who	what	whose
------	-----	------	-------

보기 2	walking the dog	tire is flat	she said to me
------	-----------------	--------------	----------------

- 1 There's a car \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I was touched by \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The boy \_\_\_\_\_ is my brother.

# REVIEW TEST

[1-5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 Tom is the boy \_\_\_\_\_ is the most popular student in my school.

- ① who
- ② whom
- ③ whose
- ④ which
- ⑤ what

2 A koala is an animal \_\_\_\_\_ lives in Australia.

- ① who
- ② whom
- ③ whose
- ④ which
- ⑤ what

3 Stacey is a girl \_\_\_\_\_ goal is to learn five languages.

- ① who
- ② whom
- ③ whose
- ④ which
- ⑤ what

4 That's exactly \_\_\_\_\_ I wanted to say.

- ① who
- ② whose
- ③ which
- ④ that
- ⑤ what

5 Paris is the city \_\_\_\_\_ the Louvre Museum is located.

- ① when
- ② where
- ③ why
- ④ how
- ⑤ which

[6-7] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

- 6
- ① What she said made me angry.
  - ② Logan has a friend whose hair is red.
  - ③ I know a boy that is a big fan of boxing.
  - ④ He is the only boy that knows the answer.
  - ⑤ I sang a song which title was "My Love."

- 7
- ① Tell me the time when the show ends.
  - ② This is the hotel where I want to work.
  - ③ Do you remember the day when we first met?
  - ④ That is the way how I made the salad.
  - ⑤ I don't know the reason why he sold his house.

8 다음 중 빈칸에 that을 쓸 수 없는 것은?

- ① My father is a man \_\_\_\_\_ I admire.
- ② I have the same shoes \_\_\_\_\_ you have.
- ③ This is a doll with \_\_\_\_\_ my sister plays.
- ④ I have a friend \_\_\_\_\_ wants to be an actor.
- ⑤ He is the tallest boy \_\_\_\_\_ I've ever seen.

## 빈출

**9** 밑줄 친 부분의 쓰임이 나머지 넷과 다른 것은?

- ① Dan is the man who lives next door.
- ② I know the boy who works here.
- ③ I don't know who sent me the file.
- ④ I have a friend who cooks very well.
- ⑤ The man who is wearing glasses is my teacher.

**10** 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분을 생략할 수 있는 것은?

- ① Don't tell anyone what I said.
- ② Cindy is the girl who I like the most.
- ③ Joe was the only man that believed me.
- ④ She bought a shirt whose color was green.
- ⑤ The people with whom I traveled were nice.

**11** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것은?

- ① Lisbon is the city which my aunt lives.
- ② The room in where I stayed was dirty.
- ③ I have a book written in French.
- ④ I don't know the reason for that they fought.
- ⑤ The thing what I want to do now is to take a break.

**12** 빈칸에 들어갈 말이 순서대로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- Do you know a quiet place in \_\_\_\_\_ we can talk?
- Do you know a quiet place \_\_\_\_\_ we can talk?

- ① that – which      ② where – that
- ③ which – where    ④ which – which
- ⑤ where – where

**13** 다음 우리말을 영어로 바르게 옮긴 것은?

그것이 그가 보낸 마지막 메시지이다.

- ① It's the last message that he sent.
- ② It's the last message why he sent.
- ③ It's the last message what he sent.
- ④ It's the last message whom he sent.
- ⑤ It's the last message whose he sent.

## 서술형 | 빈출

[14-15] 다음 두 문장을 관계사를 이용하여 한 문장으로 쓰시오.

**14** • I want to meet the author.  
• He wrote the *Dark Tower* series.

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**15** • Today is the day.  
• My final exams are over on this day.

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 서술형

[16-18] 빈칸에 알맞은 관계사를 쓰시오.

- 16** I visited lots of blogs about traveling in Europe. That is \_\_\_\_\_ I collected the information for my trip.

- 17** Look at the baby and the puppy \_\_\_\_\_ are sleeping side by side. They're so cute.

- 18** I like November the most. November is the month \_\_\_\_\_ I was born.

## 서술형

[19-20] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 19** 젠가는 그 규칙들이 단순한 보드게임이다.  
(rule, simple)

→ Jenga is a board game \_\_\_\_\_.

- 20** 제주도는 내가 이번 여름에 가고 싶은 곳이다.  
(want, go)

→ Jeju Island is the place \_\_\_\_\_ this summer.

## 서술형

[21-22] 다음 문장에서 생략할 수 있는 부분을 찾아 쓰시오.

- 21** We saw an elephant that was walking around the fence.

- 22** I lost the watch that my father bought for me.

## 서술형

[23-25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 23** Jake가 그 소식을 들은 첫 번째 사람이었다.  
(news, the, person, that, heard, the, first)

→ Jake was \_\_\_\_\_.

- 24** 오빠는 내 생일에 내가 가장 필요로 했던 것을 주었다.  
(me, needed, what, I, gave)

→ My brother \_\_\_\_\_ the most on my birthday.

- 25** 이곳이 내가 스마트폰을 샀던 가게이다.  
(smartphone, in, that, my, I, bought)

→ This is the shop \_\_\_\_\_.

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① I don't trust people whom tell lies.
- ② I know a man whose job is to dance.
- ③ I don't believe which you've just said.
- ④ Is there anything that I can do for you?
- ⑤ He gave me the book I really wanted to read.

**서술형**

[29-31] 맥줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** This is the way how I use the coffee machine.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. I have a friend which lives in Spain.
- b. That is the cup what I'm looking for.
- c. I have a dog whose fur is brown.
- d. Tom has no one that he can trust.
- e. Mia is looking forward to the day when she will meet her parents.

- ① a, b, c
- ② a, b, d
- ③ a, c, d
- ④ b, c, d
- ⑤ c, d, e

**30** We can go to the restaurant when we celebrated your birthday.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**31** The doctor explained the reason what people get cancer.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**고난도**

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- I need a bag what has many pockets.
- My dad doesn't like people who are often late.
- I don't remember the year when I hurt my leg.
- We hired a man which speaks Spanish very well.
- Do you know the reason why he left the country?

- ① 1개
- ② 2개
- ③ 3개
- ④ 4개
- ⑤ 5개

**서술형** **고난도**

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** I have been friends with Tom for five years. He is someone whose I can trust in any situation. (1개)

**33** King Sejong was a great leader whom made Hangeul for his people. Hangeul is very scientific and logical. (1개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- I know a girl **who** wants to be a news reporter. 나는 뉴스 기자가 되기를 원하는 한 소녀를 안다. **Unit 01 - A**
- Mason often visits blogs **1** have movie reviews.  
Mason은 영화 리뷰가 있는 블로그들을 자주 방문한다. **Unit 01 - A**
- I have an old friend **2** I've known for ten years.  
나는 10년 동안 알고 지낸 오랜 친구가 있다. **Unit 01 - B**
- The coupon **which** you have is out of date. 네가 갖고 있는 쿠폰은 기한이 지났다. **Unit 01 - B**
- I like the boy **3** hair is brown. 나는 머리가 갈색인 그 소년을 좋아한다. **Unit 01 - C**
- The drama is about an old man and a dog **4** lived on an island.  
그 드라마는 어느 섬에 살았던 한 노인과 개에 관한 것이다. **Unit 02 - A**
- Jane is wearing the same dress **that** I'm wearing.  
Jane은 내가 입고 있는 것과 똑같은 드레스를 입고 있다. **Unit 02 - A**
- I didn't hear **what** you just said. 나는 네가 방금 말한 것을 듣지 못했다. **Unit 02 - B**
- My father bought me the sneakers (**that[which]**) I wanted to have.  
우리 아버지는 내가 갖고 싶어 했던 스니커즈를 내게 사 주셨다. **Unit 02 - C**
- I know the girl (**5**) playing the drums on the stage.  
나는 무대에서 드럼을 치고 있는 그 소녀를 안다. **Unit 02 - C**
- I can't wait for the day **6** my vacation starts.  
나는 내 방학이 시작하는 날을 몹시 기다린다. **Unit 03 - A**
- I'm looking for the place **7** I will stay in Italy.  
나는 내가 이탈리아에서 머물 장소를 찾고 있다. **Unit 03 - B**
- I can't tell you the reason **8** I love her so much.  
나는 내가 그녀를 정말 많이 사랑하는 이유를 네게 말해줄 수 없다. **Unit 03 - C**
- This is **how** the story ends. 이것이 그 이야기가 끝나는 방식이다. **Unit 03 - D**

## Q. Answers

**1** which[that]   **2** who(m)[that]   **3** whose   **4** that   **5** who[that] is   **6** when[on which]

**7** where[at which]   **8** why[for which]

ESSENTIAL RULES OF  
X ENGLISH GRAMMAR X

# CHAPTER **12**



## 가정법

가정법이란 실제 일어나지 않았거나

일어나지 않을 것 같은 일에 대한 가정이나

소망을 표현하는 어법이다.

**UNIT 01**      가정법 과거, 가정법 과거완료

**UNIT 02**      I wish + 가정법, as if + 가정법

# 가정법 과거, 가정법 과거완료

A

## 가정법 과거

- 형태: If + 주어 + 동사의 과거형, 주어 + would[could, might] + 동사원형
- 의미: '만일 ~라면 …할 텐데'의 의미로, 현재 사실에 반대되거나 실현 가능성이 없는 일을 가정할 때 쓴다.

If I **had** time, I **could** go to the party.

(← As I don't have time, I can't go to the party.)

If I **won** the lottery, I **would buy** a nice house.

① 가정법 과거에서 if절의 be동사는 주어의 인칭에 관계없이 were를 쓴다.

If I **were** an adult, I would not have to go to school.

B

## 가정법 과거완료

- 형태: If + 주어 + had v-ed, 주어 + would[could, might] + have v-ed
- 의미: '만일 ~였다면 …했을 텐데'의 의미로, 과거 사실과 반대되는 가정을 할 때 쓴다.

If I **had taken** the subway, I **would have arrived** on time.

(← As I didn't take the subway, I didn't arrive on time.)

If Mia **had brought** her umbrella, she **wouldn't have bought** another.

(← As Mia didn't bring her umbrella, she bought another.)

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- If Leo liked playing soccer, he \_\_\_\_\_ with us now.  
 Ⓐ will play Ⓑ would play Ⓒ would have played
- If she \_\_\_\_\_ in Korea, she could come to my wedding.  
 Ⓐ is Ⓑ were Ⓒ had been
- If my brother hadn't told me, I \_\_\_\_\_ my mom's birthday.  
 Ⓐ will forget Ⓑ had forgotten Ⓒ would have forgotten
- If I \_\_\_\_\_ asleep, I could have watched the final game.  
 Ⓐ haven't been Ⓑ hadn't been Ⓒ wouldn't have been

## PLUS : 단순 조건문 vs. 가정법 과거

- 단순 조건문: 실제로 발생 가능한 일을 가정할 때 쓰인다.

If Bob **joins** our club, we all **will be** happy.

(Bob이 가입을 할지 안 할지 알 수 없음)

- 가정법 과거: 현재 사실의 반대나 실현 불가능한 일을 가정할 때 쓰인다.

If Bob **joined** our club, we all **would be** happy.

(Bob이 가입할 가능성이 희박함)

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.18

## STEP 1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Tomorrow is test day. If I (am, were) you, I would study now.
- 2 If you had gone to the café, you (could see, could have seen) the actor.
- 3 If Lily had a boyfriend, she (wouldn't be, won't be) alone on Valentine's Day.
- 4 If I (had gotten, would have gotten) a better grade, my parents would have bought me a new smartphone.

## STEP 2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 The jeans are too expensive. If I were you, I will not buy them.
- 2 If it had been cold yesterday, I could go skating on the frozen river.
- 3 If I speak English fluently, I could make a lot of foreign friends.
- 4 If Liz heard your problem, she would have given some advice.

## STEP 3

다음 문장을 가정법으로 바꿀 때 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 As I am scared of flying, I can't go skydiving.  
→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ scared of flying, I \_\_\_\_\_ skydiving.
- 2 As I didn't know her number, I couldn't call her.  
→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ her number, I \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- 3 As I don't know him, I cannot invite him to the party.  
→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ him, I \_\_\_\_\_ him to the party.
- 4 As the man stole her purse, he went to jail.  
→ If the man \_\_\_\_\_ her purse, he \_\_\_\_\_ to jail.

## STEP 4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 내가 18살이라면, 그 영화를 볼 수 있을 텐데. (watch)  
→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ eighteen years old, I \_\_\_\_\_ the movie.
- 2 내게 충분한 돈이 있다면, 세계 여행을 할 텐데. (have, enough, travel)  
→ If I \_\_\_\_\_, I \_\_\_\_\_ around the world.
- 3 내가 배부르지 않았다면, 그 피자를 먹었을 텐데. (be full, eat)  
→ If I \_\_\_\_\_, I \_\_\_\_\_ the pizza.

## A

## I wish + 가정법

## 1 I wish + 가정법 과거

- 형태: I wish + 주어 + 동사의 과거형
- 의미: ‘~라면 좋을 텐데’의 의미로, 현재의 이를 수 없는 소망을 표현한다.

**I wish Tom didn't have** a girlfriend. I want to be his girlfriend.  
(← I'm sorry that Tom has a girlfriend.)

## 2 I wish + 가정법 과거완료

- 형태: I wish + 주어 + had v-ed
- 의미: ‘~했더라면 좋을 텐데’의 의미로, 과거 일에 대한 유감이나 아쉬움을 표현한다.

**I wish I had charged** my cell phone last night. It's out of battery.  
(← I'm sorry that I didn't charge my cell phone last night.)

## B

## as if + 가정법

## 1 as if + 가정법 과거

- 형태: as if + 주어 + 동사의 과거형
- 의미: ‘마치 ~인 것처럼’의 의미로, 현재 사실과 반대되는 내용을 가정할 때 쓴다.

She talks **as if** she **knew** the actress very well.  
(← In fact, she doesn't know the actress very well.)

## 2 as if + 가정법 과거완료

- 형태: as if + 주어 + had v-ed
- 의미: ‘마치 ~였던 것처럼’의 의미로, 과거 사실과 반대되는 내용을 가정할 때 쓴다.

Jake looks **as if** he **had not been** sick.  
(← In fact, Jake was sick.)

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 It is Thursday. I wish today \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.

- Ⓐ is Ⓑ were Ⓒ had been

2 I am tired now. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ up late last night.

- Ⓐ don't stay Ⓑ didn't stay Ⓒ hadn't stayed

3 Elena acts as if she \_\_\_\_\_ our boss, but she is not.

- Ⓐ be Ⓑ were Ⓒ had been

4 Ken talks as if he \_\_\_\_\_ Europe, but he hasn't been there.

- Ⓐ visit Ⓑ visited Ⓒ had visited

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.18

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 I like Karen, but she doesn't like me. I wish she (liked, had liked) me.
- 2 I wish I (didn't spend, hadn't spent) so much money at the mall yesterday.
- 3 My grandmother treats me as if I (were, had been) a kid, but I'm not.
- 4 She talks as if she (saw, had seen) a ghost, but she hasn't seen one.

STEP  
2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 I heard the concert was amazing. I wish I went to the concert.
- 2 Ted doesn't want to do his homework now. He wishes he doesn't have any homework.
- 3 Chris and I are friends, but he treats me as if I had been his younger sister.

STEP  
3

주어진 문장과 의미가 통하도록 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 I'm sorry that I had a fight with my brother.  
→ I wish I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I'm sorry that Susie and I are not in the same class.  
→ I wish Susie and I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 In fact, my sister doesn't clean her room every day.  
→ My sister talks as if she \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 In fact, Gary heard the news.  
→ Gary acts as if he \_\_\_\_\_.

STEP  
4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 내가 노래를 잘하면 좋을 텐데. (I, were, at, wish, I, singing, good)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 오늘 아침에 우산을 가져왔더라면 좋을 텐데. (I, had, an, wish, I, umbrella, brought)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.
- 3 진호는 한국인이지만, 그는 마치 중국 출신인 것처럼 중국어를 한다.  
(Chinese, if, he, he, speaks, were, as)  
→ Jinho is Korean, but \_\_\_\_\_ from China.

# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 내가 너라면, 그 일을 포기하지 않을 텐데. (be, give up)

→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ you, I \_\_\_\_\_ the work.

- 2 나는 매우 피곤하다. 지금 당장 한 시간 동안 잘 수 있으면 좋을 텐데. (wish, sleep)

→ I am very tired. \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour right now.

- 3 내가 더 일찍 도착했더라면, 그를 만날 수 있었을 텐데. (arrive, meet)

→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ earlier, I \_\_\_\_\_ him.

- 4 햇빛이 너무 강하다. 내 선글라스를 가져왔더라면 좋을 텐데. (bring, sunglasses)

→ The sun is too strong. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.

- 5 이 로봇은 마치 사람인 것처럼 말한다. (a human)

→ This robot talks as if \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 네가 서둘렀다면, 그 열차를 탈 수 있었을 텐데. (hurry up, take)

→ If you \_\_\_\_\_, you \_\_\_\_\_ the train.

- 7 그녀가 내 충고를 받아들였다면, 실패하지 않았을 텐데. (take, fail)

→ If she \_\_\_\_\_ my advice, she \_\_\_\_\_.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 내가 지금 어른이면 좋을 텐데. (I, a, grown-up, wish, I, were)

→ \_\_\_\_\_ now.

- 2 비가 오지 않았다면, 나는 소풍을 갔을 텐데. (on, I, gone, a, picnic, would, have)

→ If it had not rained, \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 Anne이 우리와 함께 있다면, 우리는 더 재미있을 텐데. (more, fun, we, have, would)

→ If Anne were with us, \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 James에게 내 비밀을 말하지 않았더라면 좋을 텐데. (I, told, not, secret, had, wish, my)

→ I \_\_\_\_\_ to James.

- 5 Sarah는 가끔 다섯 살 아이인 것처럼 행동한다. (if, she, behaves, kid, a five-year-old, as, were)

→ Sarah sometimes \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 그는 마치 스페인에 가 봤던 것처럼 말했지만 그는 거기에 가 본 적이 없다.

(if, to, been, he, he, had, talked, as, Spain)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, but he hasn't been there.

**C**

다음 문장을 가정법으로 바꿀 때 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

1 I'm sorry that I can't play the drums.

→ I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ the drums.

2 I don't have a car, so I can't give him a ride.

→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ a car, I \_\_\_\_\_ him a ride.

3 I'm sorry that I didn't buy the coat then.

→ I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ the coat then.

4 As the weather is fine now, we can go for a walk.

→ If the weather \_\_\_\_\_ fine now, we \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk.

5 In fact, the accident didn't happen yesterday.

→ I feel as if the accident \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.

6 As I didn't miss the bus, I was not late for the meeting.

→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus, I \_\_\_\_\_ late for the meeting.

7 In fact, he can't drive a truck.

→ He talks as if he \_\_\_\_\_ a truck.

**D**

그림을 보고 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 가정법 문장을 완성하시오.

1



2



3



1 If I had enough money, I \_\_\_\_\_. (buy this dress)

2 I wish \_\_\_\_\_. I can't finish the project by the deadline. (have more time)

3 I wish \_\_\_\_\_. It is so cold now. (lose one's gloves)

# REVIEW TEST

[1-5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 I have to go now. If I had more time, I \_\_\_\_\_ longer.

- ① stay
- ② stayed
- ③ had stayed
- ④ would stay
- ⑤ would have stayed

2 If I had missed the bus, I \_\_\_\_\_ the airplane.

- ① miss
- ② missed
- ③ had missed
- ④ would miss
- ⑤ would have missed

3 I only have a younger sister, but I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ an older brother.

- ① have
- ② had
- ③ have had
- ④ had had
- ⑤ haven't had

4 I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ harder when I was young.

- ① study
- ② studied
- ③ have study
- ④ had studied
- ⑤ would have studied

5 My teacher loves us as if we \_\_\_\_\_ his children.

- ① are
- ② were
- ③ had been
- ④ would
- ⑤ would have been

[6-7] 다음 중 밑줄 친 부분이 잘못된 것을 고르시오.

6 ① Alice wishes she has long hair.  
② He talks as if he had helped us.  
③ If I were free, I could visit you.  
④ My uncle treats me as if I were a baby.  
⑤ If he hadn't come to this city, he couldn't have met me.

7 ① I wish I had a lot of friends.  
② Alex talks as if he were married.  
③ I wish I had brought my camera with me this morning.  
④ If you had a million dollars, what would you do with it?  
⑤ If you saw the movie, you would have liked the ending.

빈출

8 다음 문장을 가정법으로 바르게 고친 것은?

Because I came late, I couldn't see Ted.

- ① If I came late, I couldn't see Ted.
- ② If I didn't come late, I saw Ted.
- ③ If I had not come late, I had seen Ted.
- ④ If I had come late, I couldn't have seen Ted.
- ⑤ If I had not come late, I could have seen Ted.

## 빈칸

[9-11] 다음 우리말을 영어로 바르게 옮긴 것을 고르시오.

**9**

내가 19살이라면, 운전면허증을 딸 수 있을 텐데.

- ① If I am nineteen years old, I can get a driver's license.
- ② If I was nineteen years old, I got a driver's license.
- ③ If I were nineteen years old, I could get a driver's license.
- ④ If I were nineteen years old, I could have gotten a driver's license.
- ⑤ If I had been nineteen years old, I could have gotten a driver's license.

## 서술형

[12-14] ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**12**

I already have three cars. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ a nice sports car too.  
(have)

**10**

내가 더 일찍 일어났더라면, 나는 아침을 먹었을 텐데.

- ① If I wake up earlier, I will have breakfast.
- ② If I woke up earlier, I would have breakfast.
- ③ If I woke up earlier, I would have had breakfast.
- ④ If I had woken up earlier, I would have had breakfast.
- ⑤ If I had woken up earlier, I would have had breakfast.

**14**

Laura talks as if she \_\_\_\_\_ me yesterday. In fact, she didn't call. (call)

## 서술형

[15-17] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

**15**

Brian이 담배를 끊는다면, 그는 더 건강할 텐데.  
(stop, be)

→ If Brian \_\_\_\_\_ smoking, he \_\_\_\_\_ healthier.

**11**

내 휴대 전화를 떨어뜨리지 않았더라면 좋을 텐데.

- ① I wish I drop my cell phone.
- ② I wish I dropped my cell phone.
- ③ I wish I didn't drop my cell phone.
- ④ I wish I had dropped my cell phone.
- ⑤ I wish I hadn't dropped my cell phone.

**16**

내가 그에게 사과했더라면, 그가 나를 용서했을 텐데.  
(apologize, forgive)

→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ to him, he \_\_\_\_\_ me.

**17** 한국 전쟁이 일어나지 않았더라면 좋을 텐데.  
(happen)

→ I wish the Korean War \_\_\_\_\_.

**18** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것은?

- ① I wish I can speak Chinese.
- ② He talks as if he had written the book.
- ③ If she have worked harder, she would not have been fired.
- ④ I wish my friends have not missed my birthday.
- ⑤ If he had seen you, he will have told you.

**서술형**

[19-21] 다음 문장을 가정법으로 바꿀 때 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

**19** As I don't have a car, I can't drive you to the airport.

→ If I \_\_\_\_\_ a car, I \_\_\_\_\_ you to the airport.

**20** As Jason lied to me, I didn't trust him.

→ If Jason \_\_\_\_\_ to me, I would have trusted him.

**21** I'm sorry that winter vacation isn't longer.

→ I wish \_\_\_\_\_.

**22** 빈칸에 공통으로 들어갈 말은?

- If I \_\_\_\_\_ you, I would not go to the party.
- Amy walks as if she \_\_\_\_\_ a top model, but she is not.

- ① be
- ② am
- ③ is
- ④ were
- ⑤ had been

**서술형**

[23-25] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

**23** Tony는 마치 그 수학 시험이 쉬웠던 것처럼 말한다.  
(if, the, had, test, math, been, easy, as)

→ Tony talks \_\_\_\_\_.

**24** 내가 그 비싼 코트를 사지 않았더라면 좋을 텐데.  
(not, the, I, coat, had, expensive, bought)

→ I wish \_\_\_\_\_.

**25** 그녀가 바쁘지 않다면, 우리와 함께 여행 갈 수 있을 텐데.  
(she, she, could, busy, go, if, weren't)

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
on the trip with us.

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① He talks as if he didn't know me.
- ② I wish I haven't been here with you.
- ③ If I didn't live with my family, I would be very lonely.
- ④ I wish I had spent more time with my grandmother before she died.
- ⑤ If we hadn't worn dresses, we could have climbed the mountain.

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. I wish I could speak Italian.  
 b. She acts as if she were my sister.  
 c. I would have bought a new laptop now if I had enough money.  
 d. If you knew her, you can introduce her to me.  
 e. If I had worn a hat, I wouldn't have gotten sunburned.

- ① a, b, c      ② a, b, d  
 ③ a, b, e      ④ b, c, e  
 ⑤ b, d, e

**30** He will call you if he had your phone number.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

고난도

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- If I drive, I could have arrived sooner.
- I wish I had long hair.
- I wish my family had stayed together.
- If we practiced harder, we could have won last night.
- If I hadn't given up, I would have become a singer.

- ① 1개      ② 2개      ③ 3개  
 ④ 4개      ⑤ 5개

서술형 고난도

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** I heard the show was exciting. I wish I went to it. (1개)

서술형

[29-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** She speaks as if she had known my secret. In fact, she doesn't.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**33** Next month, I am going to go abroad for college. I am so excited, but my mother is worried about it. She acts as if I am a baby. If I were her, I wouldn't have worried so much. (2개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- If I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ time, I \_\_\_\_\_ to the party.

만일 내가 시간이 있다면, 나는 그 파티에 갈 수 있을 텐데. **Unit 01 - A**

- If I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the lottery, I \_\_\_\_\_ a nice house.

만일 내가 복권에 당첨된다면, 나는 좋은 집을 살 텐데. **Unit 01 - A**

- If I **had taken** the subway, I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on time.

만일 내가 지하철을 탔다면, 나는 제시간에 도착했을 텐데. **Unit 01 - B**

- If Mia <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ her umbrella, she **wouldn't** \_\_\_\_\_ another.

만일 Mia가 그녀의 우산을 가져왔더라면, 그녀는 또 하나를 사지 않았을 텐데. **Unit 01 - B**

- I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Tom \_\_\_\_\_ a girlfriend. I want to be his girlfriend.

Tom이 여자 친구가 없으면 좋을 텐데. 나는 그의 여자 친구가 되고 싶다. **Unit 02 - A**

- I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ my cell phone last night. It's out of battery.

내가 어젯밤에 내 휴대 전화를 충전했더라면 좋을 텐데. 휴대 전화에 배터리가 없다. **Unit 02 - A**

- She talks **as if** she <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the actress very well.

그녀는 마치 그녀가 그 여배우를 매우 잘 아는 것처럼 말한다. **Unit 02 - B**

- Jake looks <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ sick.

Jake는 마치 아프지 않았던 것처럼 보인다. **Unit 02 - B**

## Answers

<sup>1</sup> had, could go    <sup>2</sup> won, would buy    <sup>3</sup> would have arrived    <sup>4</sup> had brought, have bought

<sup>5</sup> wish, didn't[did not] have    <sup>6</sup> wish, had charged    <sup>7</sup> knew    <sup>8</sup> as if, hadn't[had not] been

ESSENTIAL RULES OF  
X X  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

# CHAPTER 13

## 일치와 화법

UNIT 01 시제의 일치

UNIT 02 화법

주절과 종속절은 시제를 일치시킨다.

화법은 말이나 생각을 전달하는 방법으로

직접화법과 간접화법이 있다.

# 시제의 일치

A

## 시제 일치

주절의 시제	종속절의 시제
현재	모든 시제 가능
	현재 → 과거
과거	현재완료, 과거 → 과거완료
	will → would, can → could, may → might, must → must[had to]

- 1 주절의 시제가 현재인 경우 종속절에는 모든 시제가 올 수 있다.

I *think* that Julie **has** a boyfriend.

I *think* that Julie **had** a boyfriend.

I *think* that Julie **will have** a boyfriend soon.

- 2 주절의 시제가 과거인 경우 종속절에는 과거 또는 과거완료가 와야 한다.

I *thought* that Max **was** absent from school.

I *thought* that Max **had been** absent from school.

I *thought* that Max **would be** absent from school.

B

## 시제 일치의 예외

- 1 과학적 사실, 일반적 진리, 속담 등은 주절의 시제와 상관없이 종속절에 항상 현재시제를 쓴다.

I learned that oil **is** lighter than water. <과학적 사실>

I learned that oil ~~was~~ lighter than water.

She said that good medicine **tastes** bitter. <속담>

She said that good medicine ~~tasted~~ bitter.

- 2 역사적 사실은 주절의 시제와 상관없이 종속절에 항상 과거시제를 쓴다.

My art teacher said that Vincent van Gogh **killed** himself in 1890.

My art teacher said that Vincent van Gogh ~~had killed~~ himself in 1890.

- 3 과거의 상황이 현재에도 지속되는 경우, 주절의 시제가 과거이더라도 종속절에 현재시제를 쓸 수 있다.

Kate *said* that she **updates** her blog every day.

## CHECK UP

빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Long ago, people didn't know that the earth \_\_\_\_\_ round.  
 ① is      ② was      ③ had been
- 2 I knew that Shakespeare \_\_\_\_\_ born in England in 1564.  
 ① is      ② was      ③ had been

# PRACTICE

Q Answer Key p.19

## STEP 1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 They said that the baseball game (is, had been) canceled.
- 2 I didn't know that potatoes (grow, will grow) underground.
- 3 My teacher said that slow and steady (wins, won) the race.
- 4 I read that the remote control (was, had been) invented in 1956.

## STEP 2

밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 1 My science teacher said that light moved faster than sound.
- 2 My father said that a friend in need was a friend indeed.
- 3 I heard that George Washington had been the first president of the US.

## STEP 3

문장의 주절을 과거시제로 바꿀 때, 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 Insu says that the Korean team will win the final game.  
→ Insu said that the Korean team \_\_\_\_\_ the final game.
- 2 Kevin doesn't know that he lost his cell phone.  
→ Kevin didn't know that he \_\_\_\_\_ his cell phone.
- 3 The book says that the Second World War started in late 1939.  
→ The book said that the Second World War \_\_\_\_\_ in late 1939.
- 4 The boy knows that one and one makes two.  
→ The boy knew that one and one \_\_\_\_\_ two.

## STEP 4

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 모든 사람들이 네가 최선을 다했다는 것을 알고 있다. (do one's best)  
→ Everybody knows that \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Jake는 루브르 박물관이 1793년에 지어졌다고 읽었다. (be built)  
→ Jake read that the Louvre Museum \_\_\_\_\_ in 1793.
- 3 우리는 뱀들이 겨울 동안 잠을 잔다고 배웠다. (snake, sleep)  
→ We learned that \_\_\_\_\_ during the winter.

# 화법

- 직접화법: 다른 사람이 말한 내용을 인용 부호를 이용하여 그대로 전달할 때 쓰는 화법
- 간접화법: 다른 사람이 말한 내용을 전달하는 사람 입장에서 바꾸어 전달할 때 쓰는 화법

A

## 평서문의 화법 전환 (직접화법 → 간접화법)

- ① 전달동사를 바꾼다. (say[said] → say[said] / say to[said to] → tell[told])
  - ② 주절의 콤마와 인용 부호를 없애고 접속사 that을 쓴다. (that은 생략 가능)
  - ③ 인용 부호 안의 인칭대명사는 전달자에 맞춰서 바꾸고, 동사도 시제에 맞춰 바꾼다.
- Ryan said to me, "I want to invite you to my birthday party." <직접화법>  
→ Ryan **told** me (**that**) **he wanted** to invite **me** to **his** birthday party. <간접화법>

B

## 의문문의 화법 전환 (직접화법 → 간접화법)

### 1 의문사가 없는 의문문

- ① 주절의 동사는 ask로 바꾼다.
- ② 주절의 콤마와 인용 부호를 없애고 접속사 if[whether]를 쓴다.
- ③ if[whether] 다음의 어순을 「주어 + 동사」로 바꾼다. 인용 부호 안의 인칭대명사는 전달자에 맞춰서 바꾸고, 동사도 시제에 맞춰 바꾼다.

Jay said to me, "Do you like snowboarding?" <직접화법>  
→ Jay **asked** me **if[whether]** **I liked** snowboarding. <간접화법>

### 2 의문사가 있는 의문문

- ① 주절의 동사는 ask로 바꾼다.
- ② 주절의 콤마와 인용 부호를 없애고 의문사를 그대로 쓴다.
- ③ 의문사 다음의 어순을 「주어 + 동사」로 바꾼다. 인용 부호 안의 인칭대명사는 전달자에 맞춰서 바꾸고, 동사도 시제에 맞춰 바꾼다.

Mia said to me, "Why do you study Japanese?" <직접화법>  
→ Mia **asked** me **why** **I studied** Japanese. <간접화법>

- ④ 의문사가 주어인 경우에는 「의문사 + 동사」의 어순을 그대로 쓴다.
- Tim said to me, "Who made you angry?"  
→ Tim **asked** me **who had made** me angry.

### CHECK UP

다음을 간접화법으로 바꿀 때, 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Aaron said to me, "I don't know your phone number."  
→ Aaron told me that \_\_\_\_\_ phone number.  
④ I don't know your      ⑥ he doesn't know your      ⑦ he didn't know my

# PRACTICE

Answer Key p.20

STEP  
1

( ) 안에서 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

- 1 Elijah (said, told) me that he had to work overtime.
- 2 The boy asked me (if, that) I knew the way to city hall.
- 3 I asked Jane where (had she bought, she had bought) the mug.
- 4 The teacher asked us (who had kicked, had who kicked) the trash can.

STEP  
2

다음을 간접화법으로 바꿀 때, 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 1 The weather forecast said, "It will snow on Christmas Day."

→ The weather forecast \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 Sarah said to me, "Do you like musicals?"

→ Sarah \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 I said to Tom, "I have something to tell you."

→ I \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 Harry said to me, "Where are you going?"

→ Harry \_\_\_\_\_.

- 5 Tommy said, "I got an F in history."

→ Tommy \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 My boss said to me, "Who sent the fax?"

→ My boss \_\_\_\_\_.

- 7 Ted said to me, "Do you want to change the schedule?"

→ Ted \_\_\_\_\_.

- 8 I said to Lisa, "How did you make the potato pizza?"

→ I \_\_\_\_\_.

STEP  
3

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 Nick은 나에게 좋은 선생님이 되고 싶다고 말했다. (want)

→ Nick \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ to be a good teacher.

- 2 Anne은 내게 그녀가 내 공책을 빌릴 수 있는지 물었다. (can, borrow)

→ Anne \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ notebook.

- 3 그녀가 나에게 왜 그 배우를 좋아하느냐고 물었다. (like)

→ She \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ the actor.

# GRAMMAR FOR WRITING

A

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

- 1 Mike는 나에게 인도 음식을 좋아하는지 물었다. (like)  
→ Mike \_\_\_\_\_ Indian food.
- 2 우리는 물이 100°C에서 끓는다고 배웠다. (boil)  
→ We learned \_\_\_\_\_ at 100°C.
- 3 나는 한국 전쟁이 1950년에 시작됐다고 들었다. (the Korean War, start)  
→ I heard \_\_\_\_\_ in 1950.
- 4 Susie는 언젠가 유럽을 여행하고 싶다고 말한다. (want, travel)  
→ Susie says that \_\_\_\_\_ to Europe someday.
- 5 그 아이는 일본이 섬나라라는 것을 몰랐다. (Japan, be)  
→ The child didn't know \_\_\_\_\_ an island country.
- 6 나는 내 여동생이 어제 내 재킷을 입었다고 생각한다. (my sister, wear)  
→ I think \_\_\_\_\_ my jacket yesterday.
- 7 그들은 나에게 왜 의사가 되고 싶은지 물었다. (want, become)  
→ They \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor.

B

우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 1 James는 그 영화를 이미 봤다고 내게 말했다. (me, seen, that, had, told, already, he)  
→ James \_\_\_\_\_ the movie.
- 2 그 외국인은 나에게 영어를 할 수 있는지 물었다. (could, me, I, English, speak, asked, if)  
→ The foreigner \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 할아버지께서는 두 개의 머리가 하나보다 낫다고 말씀하셨다. (that, two, said, are, better, heads)  
→ My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ than one.
- 4 Ben은 누가 저 큰 집에 사는지 나에게 물었다. (who, in, me, big, that, asked, house, lived)  
→ Ben \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 나는 피카소가 스페인에서 태어났다고 들었다. (Spain, that, was, heard, born, in, Picasso)  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 엄마가 슈퍼마켓에서 우리 선생님을 만났다고 나에게 말씀하셨다.  
(teacher, me, told, she, my, that, had, met)  
→ Mom \_\_\_\_\_ at the supermarket.

## C

주어진 대화를 간접화법으로 바꿀 때 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

Mike: 1. I will go to America to study.

Rosie: 2. What do you want to study in America?

Mike: 3. I plan to study marketing.

Rosie: That's great!

1 Mike told Rosie \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Rosie asked Mike \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Mike told Rosie \_\_\_\_\_.

Seth: 4. Did you hear the noise coming from Maple Street last night?

Lucy: No, I didn't. I went to bed early. 5. What happened?

Seth: 6. There was a car accident.

4 Seth asked Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ coming from Maple Street the previous night.

5 Lucy asked Seth \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Seth told Lucy \_\_\_\_\_.

## D

그림을 보고 대화를 읽은 뒤 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 써서 문장을 완성하시오.

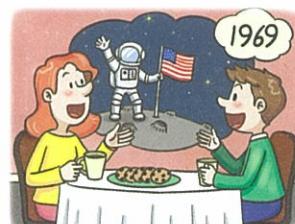
1



Mia: Can you play the drums?

Liam: No, I can't.

2



Mom: What did you learn today?

Jimin: Humans first landed on the moon in 1969. I didn't know that.

3



Asher: What did you do last weekend?

Luna: I rode a bike along the river.

1 Mia asked Liam \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Jimin learned that \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Luna told Asher \_\_\_\_\_ last weekend.

# REVIEW TEST

[1-5] 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 고르시오.

1 She thought that Jake \_\_\_\_\_ in trouble.

- ① is being
- ② was
- ③ were
- ④ will be
- ⑤ have been

2 I learned that light \_\_\_\_\_ faster than sound.

- ① travel
- ② travels
- ③ traveled
- ④ has traveled
- ⑤ had traveled

3 The book says the light bulb \_\_\_\_\_ invented by Thomas Edison.

- ① be
- ② is
- ③ was
- ④ has been
- ⑤ had been

4 Tommy asked me \_\_\_\_\_ I had ever gone scuba diving.

- ① that
- ② if
- ③ unless
- ④ what
- ⑤ though

5 Jacob told me that he \_\_\_\_\_ well soon.

- ① gets
- ② will get
- ③ is getting
- ④ would get
- ⑤ has gotten

[6-7] 다음 중 어법상 틀린 것을 고르시오.

- 6 ① Jessica said that she had a cold.  
② I know that she doesn't eat meat.  
③ She said that she wakes up at seven.  
④ He learned Mars was smaller than Earth.  
⑤ I heard that Shakespeare wrote *Hamlet*.

- 7 ① He asked me if did I like movies.  
② She asked me who had broken the glass.  
③ Mia asked me where my hometown was.  
④ Tom said that he had met Jay on the street.  
⑤ He told me that he was looking for his cell phone.

빈칸

8 다음을 간접화법으로 바꿀 때, 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말은?

My teacher said to me, "What do you want to be in the future?"

→ My teacher asked me \_\_\_\_\_ to be in the future.

- ① what did I want
- ② what I wanted
- ③ what you wanted
- ④ what did you wanted
- ⑤ what do I want

## 빈칸

[9-11] 대화를 읽고 빈칸에 들어갈 말이 순서대로 바르게 짹지 어진 것을 고르시오.

9

Mira: What is your hobby?

Steve: I like to draw pictures.

→ Steve \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_ to draw pictures.

- ① said – I liked      ② said – he liked
- ③ told – I liked      ④ told – he liked
- ⑤ asked – I liked

10

Kirk: Do you have a smartphone?

Max: Yes, I do.

→ Kirk \_\_\_\_\_ Max \_\_\_\_\_ a smartphone.

- ① said – if he has
- ② told – if he had
- ③ told – if did he have
- ④ asked – if he had
- ⑤ asked – if did he have

11

Repairman: When did you buy the computer?

Ann: I bought it two years ago.

→ The repairman \_\_\_\_\_ Ann \_\_\_\_\_ the computer.

- ① said – when she had bought
- ② told – when did she buy
- ③ told – when she bought
- ④ asked – when had she bought
- ⑤ asked – when she had bought

12 다음 대화의 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말은?

A: When can she start the work?  
B: I don't know. She didn't tell me when she \_\_\_\_\_ it.

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| ① start       | ② starts      |
| ③ can start   | ④ could start |
| ⑤ has started |               |

## 서술형

[13-15] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안의 말을 이용하여 문장을 완성하시오.

13 우리는 지구가 태양 주변을 돈다고 배웠다.  
(the earth, move around)

→ We were taught that \_\_\_\_\_ the sun.

14 그녀는 나에게 내가 나이에 비해 어려 보인다고 말했다.  
(look, young)

→ She \_\_\_\_\_ for my age.

15 그는 나에게 방학 동안 무엇을 할 것인지 물어보았다.  
(what, will)

→ He \_\_\_\_\_ during vacation.

## 서술형

[16-18] 밑줄 친 부분을 어법에 맞게 고치시오.

- 16** My friend says that no news was good news.

- 17** We learned that the First World War had started in July of 1914.

- 18** I knew that water froze at 0°C.

[19-20] 다음을 간접화법으로 바꿀 때, 빈칸에 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

- 19** He said to me, "I had a fight with my girlfriend."

→ He \_\_\_\_\_.

- 20** Bill said to me, "What made you think so?"

→ Bill \_\_\_\_\_.

## 서술형

- 21** 우리말과 일치하도록 주어진 조건에 맞게 문장을 완성하시오.

Amy는 나에게 커피를 원하는지 물어보았다.

- 〈조건〉 1. want, some coffee를 이용할 것  
2. 간접화법으로 쓸 것

→ \_\_\_\_\_.

## 서술형

[22-24] 우리말과 일치하도록 ( ) 안에 주어진 단어를 바르게 배열하시오.

- 22** 지훈이는 항상 스쿨버스를 타고 학교에 간다고 말했다.  
(said, always, he, school, to, goes, that)

→ Jihun \_\_\_\_\_  
by school bus.

- 23** 선생님께서 내게 그 문제를 어떻게 풀었는지 물어보셨다. (solved, asked, the, I, me, problem, had, how)

→ My teacher \_\_\_\_\_.

- 24** John이 내게 숙제를 끝냈냐고 물었다. (finished, asked, I, had, me, homework, if, my)

→ John \_\_\_\_\_.

- 25** 대화를 읽고 빈칸에 들어갈 알맞은 말을 쓰시오.

Lucas: Amy, do you have any plans for tomorrow?

Amy: Yes. I will go to the baseball stadium.

Lucas: Wow! That sounds exciting.

→ Amy told Lucas \_\_\_\_\_ the next day.

**고난도**

**26** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것을 모두 고르면?

- ① I thought she wouldn't like me.
- ② I asked him what had he had for dinner.
- ③ My dad says that blood was thicker than water.
- ④ My teacher said that Napoleon had become Emperor of France in 1804.
- ⑤ I didn't know you go swimming every morning.

**27** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것으로 바르게 짹지어진 것은?

- a. She said that she had seen me at the department store.
- b. David asked me that I played any musical instrument.
- c. Emma told me that she wanted to be a ballerina.
- d. Phil asked me how long had I known Jane.
- e. The police officer asked us who had called the police.

- ① a, b, c
- ② a, c, d
- ③ a, c, e
- ④ b, c, d
- ⑤ b, c, e

**고난도**

**28** 다음 중 어법상 옳은 것의 개수는?

- My father realized that he had left the door open.
- I thought that my sister would be a great scientist.
- Jane asked me what had I done on my vacation.
- I heard that Yun Dong-ju had died at the age of twenty-seven.
- He told me that he had a headache.

- ① 1개
- ② 2개
- ③ 3개
- ④ 4개
- ⑤ 5개

**서술형**

[29-31] 밑줄 친 부분이 어법상 옳은지 판단하고, 틀리면 바르게 고치시오.

**29** I learned that Antarctica was colder than the Arctic.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**30** She asked me what flower did I like best.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**31** Gary asked me which team had won the match.

(O / X) \_\_\_\_\_

**서술형**

[32-33] 어법상 틀린 부분을 찾아 바르게 고치시오.

**32** Timmy told me that he will go to the movies after school. (1개)

**33** When I met the couple two years ago, they said that they have been married for five years. I also told them if they had children. (2개)

# LET'S REVIEW

주요 예문을 다시 한번 확인하고, 우리말과 일치하도록 빈칸을 채우시오.

- I think that Julie <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a boyfriend. 나는 Julie가 남자 친구가 있었다고 생각한다. **Unit 01 - A**
- I think that Julie **will have** a boyfriend soon. 나는 Julie가 곧 남자 친구가 생길 거라고 생각한다. **Unit 01 - A**
- I thought that Max **had been** absent from school. 나는 Max가 학교에 결석했었다고 생각했다. **Unit 01 - A**
- I thought that Max <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ absent from school.  
나는 Max가 학교에 결석할 거라고 생각했다. **Unit 01 - A**
- I learned that oil <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ lighter than water.  
나는 기름이 물보다 더 가볍다고 배웠다. **Unit 01 - B**
- She said that good medicine **tastes** bitter. 그녀는 좋은 약은 더 쓰다고 말했다. **Unit 01 - B**
- My art teacher said that Vincent van Gogh <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ himself in 1890.  
나의 미술 선생님은 빈센트 반 고흐가 1890년에 자살했다고 말했다. **Unit 01 - B**
- Kate said that she **updates** her blog every day.  
Kate는 자신의 블로그를 매일 업데이트한다고 말했다. **Unit 01 - B**
- Ryan said to me, "I want to invite you to my birthday party."  
Ryan은 나에게 "나는 너를 내 생일 파티에 초대하고 싶어."라고 말했다.  
→ Ryan <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me **that he** \_\_\_\_\_ to invite \_\_\_\_\_ to  
\_\_\_\_\_ birthday party.  
Ryan은 나에게 그가 나를 그의 생일 파티에 초대하고 싶다고 말했다. **Unit 02 - A**
- Jay said to me, "Do you like snowboarding?"  
Jay는 나에게 "너는 스노보드 타는 것을 좋아하니?"라고 말했다.  
→ Jay <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ snowboarding.  
Jay는 나에게 내가 스노보드 타는 것을 좋아하는지 물었다. **Unit 02 - B**
- Mia said to me, "Why do you study Japanese?" Mia는 나에게 "너는 왜 일본어를 공부하니?"라고 말했다.  
→ Mia <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese.  
Mia는 나에게 내가 왜 일본어를 공부하는지 물었다. **Unit 02 - B**

## Q Answers

- <sup>1</sup> had   <sup>2</sup> would be   <sup>3</sup> is   <sup>4</sup> killed   <sup>5</sup> told, wanted, me, his   <sup>6</sup> asked, if[whether] I liked  
<sup>7</sup> asked, why I studied

## MEMO

# MEMO

# MEMO

# MEMO

# MEMO

## 지은이

---

### NE능률 영어교육연구소

NE능률 영어교육연구소는 혁신적이며 효율적인 영어 교재를 개발하고  
영어 학습의 질을 한 단계 높이고자 노력하는 NE능률의 연구조직입니다.

---

## GRAMMAR Inside <Level 2>

펴낸이	주민홍
펴낸곳	서울특별시 마포구 월드컵북로 396(상암동) 누리꿈스퀘어 비즈니스타워 10층 (주)NE능률(우편번호 03925)
펴낸날	2022년 1월 5일 개정판 제1쇄 발행 2022년 9월 15일 제8쇄
전화	02 2014 7114
팩스	02 3142 0356
홈페이지	<a href="http://www.neungyule.com">www.neungyule.com</a>
등록번호	제1-68호
I S B N	979-11-253-3708-9 53740
정가	15,500원



## 고객센터

---

교재 내용 문의: [contact.nebooks.co.kr](mailto:contact.nebooks.co.kr) (별도의 가입 절차 없이 작성 가능)

제품 구매, 교환, 불량, 반품 문의: 02-2014-7114

☞ 전화문의는 본사 업무시간 중에만 가능합니다.

---

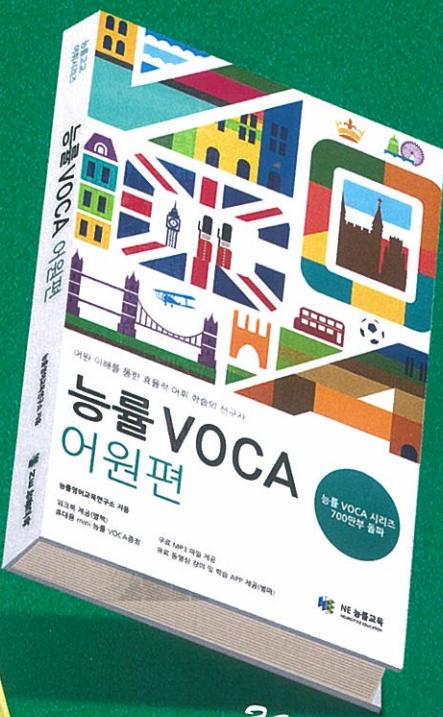
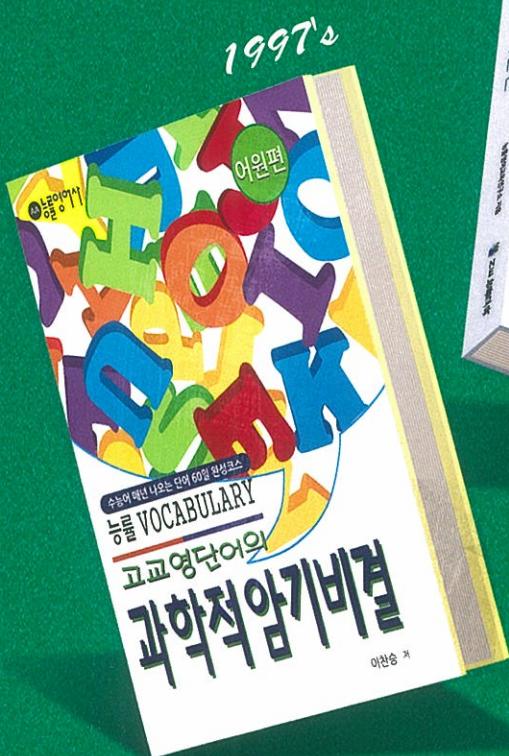


\* 고등 영 단 어 의 과 학 적 암 기 비 결 \*

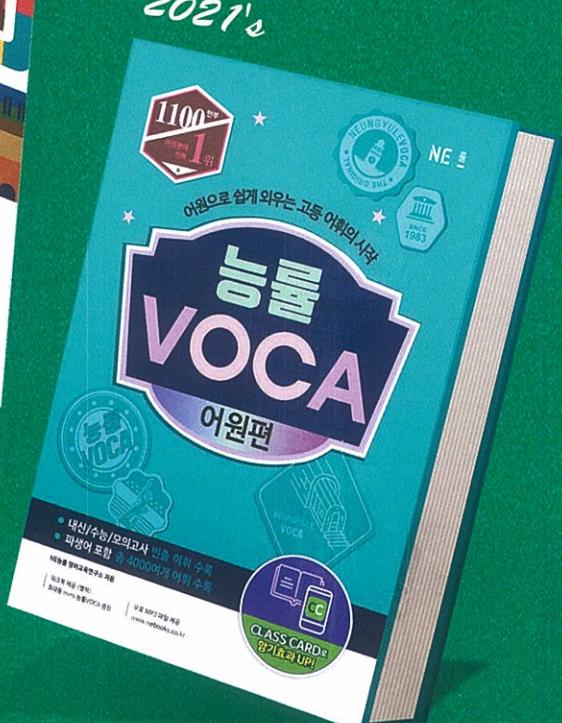
# Got A Book For Vocabulary?

*“The Original and The Best”*

Here is the **No.1 vocabulary book** in Korea, recognized by more teachers and used by more students than any other vocabulary book ever made. **Get yours today!** You won't regret it!



2013's



2021's

어원학습분야  
1위

The Original and The Best  
The Original and The Best  
The Original and The Best  
The Original and The Best

**SINCE 1983**

Korea's NO. 1 Vocabulary Book

# NE능률 교재 MAP



아래 교재 MAP을 참고하여 본인의 현재 혹은 목표 수준에 따라 교재를 선택하세요.

NE능률 교재들과 함께 영어실력을 쑥쑥~ 올려보세요!

MP3 등 교재 부가 학습 서비스 및 자세한 교재 정보는 [www.nebooks.co.kr](http://www.nebooks.co.kr)에서 확인하세요.

초1-2

초3

초3-4

초4-5

초5-6

그래머버디 1  
초등영어 문법이 된다 Starter 1

그래머버디 2  
초등영어 문법이 된다 Starter 2

초등 Grammar Inside 1  
초등 Grammar Inside 2

그래머버디 3  
Grammar Bean 1  
Grammar Bean 2  
초등영어 문법이 된다 1  
초등 Grammar Inside 3  
초등 Grammar Inside 4

Grammar Bean 3  
Grammar Bean 4  
초등영어 문법이 된다 2  
초등 Grammar Inside 5  
초등 Grammar Inside 6

초6-예비중

중1

중1-2

중2-3

중3

능률중학영어 예비중  
Grammar Inside Starter  
원리를 더한 영문법 STARTER

능률중학영어 중1  
Grammar Zone 입문편  
Grammar Zone 워크북 입문편  
1316팬클럽 문법 1  
문제로 마스터하는 중학영문법 1  
Grammar Inside 1  
열중 16강 문법 1  
쓰기로 마스터하는 중학서술형 1학년

능률중학영어 중2  
1316팬클럽 문법 2  
문제로 마스터하는 중학영문법 2  
Grammar Inside 2  
열중 16강 문법 2  
고득점 독해를 위한 중학 구문 마스터 1  
원리를 더한 영문법 1  
중학영문법 총정리 모의고사 1

Grammar Zone 기초편  
Grammar Zone 워크북 기초편  
고득점 독해를 위한 중학 구문 마스터 2  
원리를 더한 영문법 2  
중학영문법 총정리 모의고사 2  
쓰기로 마스터하는 중학서술형 2학년  
천문장 입문  
고득점 독해를 위한 중학 구문 마스터 3  
중학영문법 총정리 모의고사 3  
쓰기로 마스터하는 중학서술형 3학년

예비고-고1

고1

고1-2

고2-3

고3

문제로 마스터하는 고등영문법  
올클 수능 어법 start  
천문장 기본

Grammar Zone 기본편 1  
Grammar Zone 워크북 기본편 1  
Grammar Zone 기본편 2  
Grammar Zone 워크북 기본편 2  
필히 통하는 고등영문법 기본

필히 통하는 고등영문법 실력편  
TEPS BY STEP G+R Basic

Grammar Zone 종합편  
Grammar Zone 워크북 종합편  
올클 수능 어법 완성  
천문장 완성

수능 이상/  
토플 80-89·  
텝스 600-699점

수능 이상/  
토플 90-99·  
텝스 700-799점

수능 이상/  
토플 100·  
텝스 800점 이상

TEPS BY STEP G+R 1

TEPS BY STEP G+R 2

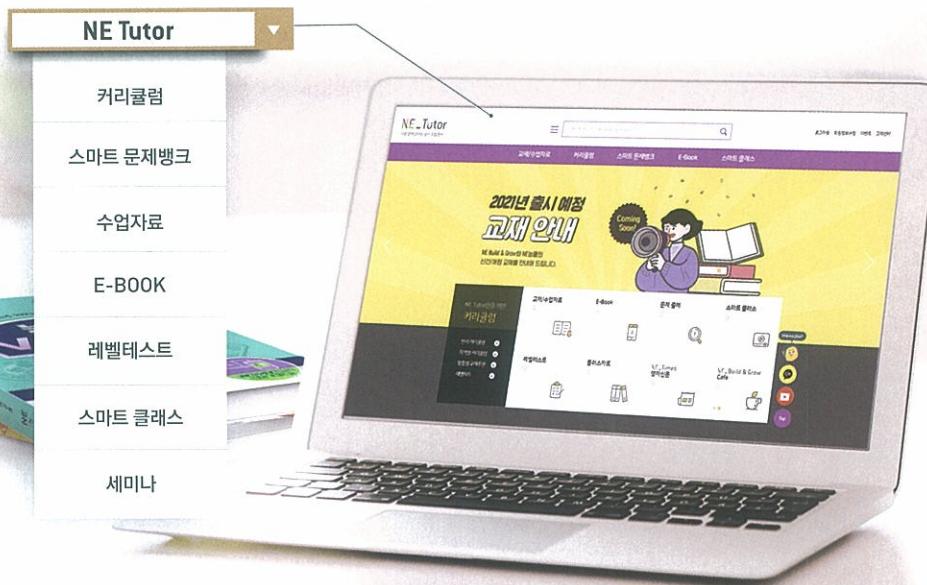
TEPS BY STEP G+R 3

10분 만에 끝내는 영어 수업 준비!



NE Tutor는 NE능률이 만든 대한민국 대표 영어 티칭 플랫폼으로  
영어 수업에 필요한 모든 콘텐츠와 서비스를 제공합니다.

[www.netutor.co.kr](http://www.netutor.co.kr)



• 전국 영어 학원 선생님들이 뽑은 NE Tutor 서비스 TOP 3! •



**1st. 스마트 문제뱅크** 1분이면 맞춤형 어휘, 문법 테스트지 완성!!  
문법, 독해, 어휘 추가 문제 출제 가능



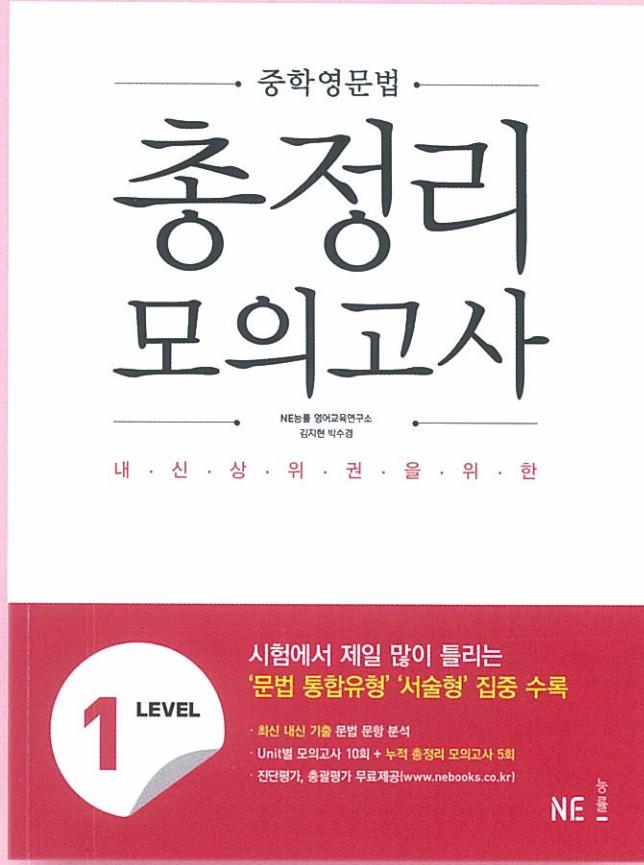
**2nd. 레벨테스트** 학부모 상담 시 필수 아이템!!  
초등 1학년부터 중등 3학년까지 9단계 학생 수준 진단



**3rd. E-Book** 이젠 연구용 교재 없이도 모든 책 내용을 볼 수 있다!!  
ELT부터 중고등까지 온라인 수업 교재로 활용

NE\_Tutor

전국 내신 시험 빈출 유형 풀이로  
중간/기말고사 대비 효과 극대화



전국 온오프 서점 판매중

# 내신 상위권 필수 문법서, 중학 영문법 총정리 모의고사



1학년  
(예비중·중1)



2학년  
(중2)



3학년  
(중3)

## 신경향 기출 유형 제공

- 시험에서 제일 많이 틀리는 '문법 통합유형' 및 서술형 대비
- 전국 내신 시험지 분석 후 빈출 내신 유형 및 기출 응용 수록

## 중간·기말고사 형식의 모의고사로 내신 완벽 대비

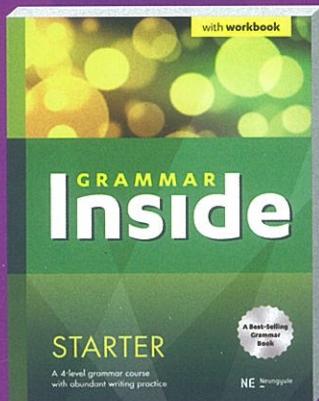
- 중학 교과서 커리큘럼에 맞춰 2~3개 문법 사항을 묶은 Unit별 모의고사 10회 + 누적 총정리 모의고사 5회 제공

## 학습을 돋는 자세한 해설

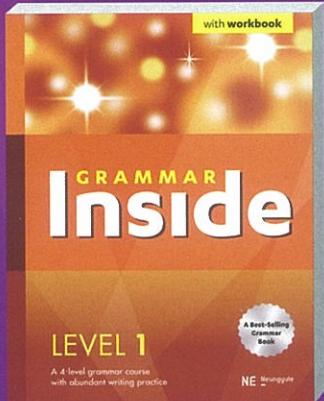
- 문항 해결의 키가 되는 문법 포인트 제공
- 교재 시작 전 진단 평가, 교재 학습 후 총괄 평가 제공

많은 문제를 통해  
체계적으로 연습하는 중학 영문법

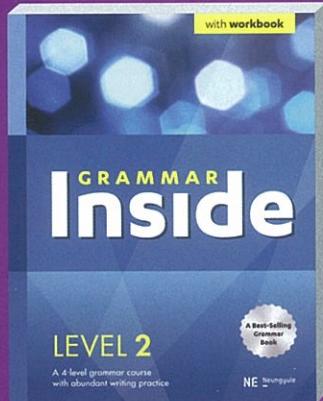
# GRAMMAR Inside



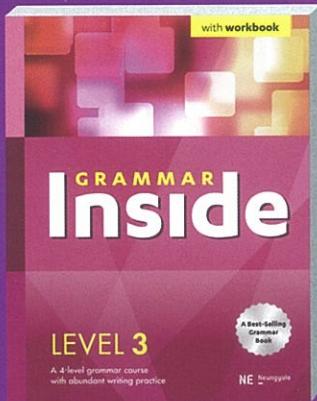
STARTER 예비중 대상



LEVEL 1 중1 대상

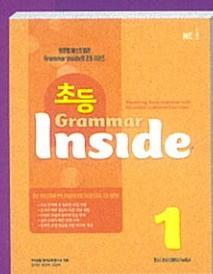


LEVEL 2 중2 대상

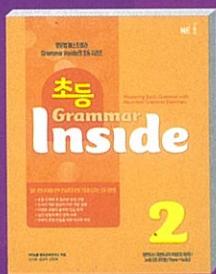


LEVEL 3 중3 대상

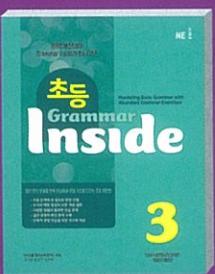
## 초등 Grammar Inside



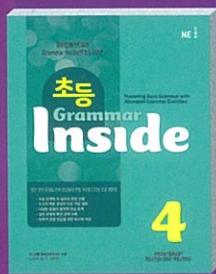
1권  
초3-4 대상



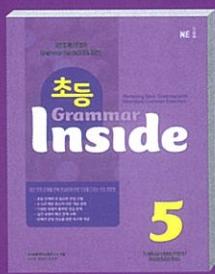
2권  
초3-4 대상



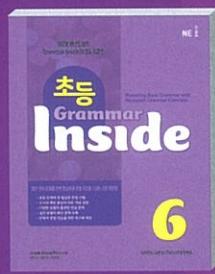
3권  
초4-5 대상



4권  
초4-5 대상



5권  
초5-6 대상



6권  
초5-6 대상

[www.nebooks.co.kr](http://www.nebooks.co.kr)



# GRAMMAR **Inside**

with **workbook**

A 4-level grammar course  
with abundant writing practice

**Compact and concise English grammar**

간결하고 정확한 문법 설명

**Extensive practice in sentence writing**

다양한 유형의 영어 문장 쓰기

**Full preparation for middle school tests**

내신 완벽 대비

**+ Workbook with additional exercises**

풍부한 양의 추가 문제

NE능률 교재 부가학습 사이트  
[www.nebooks.co.kr](http://www.nebooks.co.kr)

NE Books 사이트에서 본 교재에 대한 상세 정보 및 부가학습 자료를  
이용하실 수 있습니다.

정가 15,500 원

53740



9 791125 337089

ISBN 979-11-253-3708-9

\* 교재 내용 문의 : [contact.nebooks.co.kr](mailto:contact.nebooks.co.kr)